

Using cell size to represent phytoplankton diversity in studies of nitrogen dynamics in the southern Benguela

Josephine Ffion Atkins

A thesis presented in fulfillment of the requirement for the degree
of

Doctor of Philosophy



Faculty of Science, Department of Oceanography

University of Cape Town

South Africa

February, 2017

The copyright of this thesis vests in the author. No quotation from it or information derived from it is to be published without full acknowledgement of the source. The thesis is to be used for private study or non-commercial research purposes only.

Published by the University of Cape Town (UCT) in terms of the non-exclusive license granted to UCT by the author.

"We shape our self to fit this world, and by the world are shaped again"

David Whyte

Declaration

I hereby declare that this thesis is my own work and effort, both in concept and execution, with normal guidance and assistance from my supervisors. A few comments are needed on the data used in this thesis:

- Data for Chapter 2 (“Can effective diameter (D_{eff}) capture the nitrogen utilisation by high biomass blooms at upwelling/downwelling timescales”) were given to me by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF). The sampling methods described are those carried out by Trevor Probyn (^{15}N uptake), Grant Pitcher (phytoplankton community composition, chlorophyll *a* and primary productivity) and Andre du Randt (CTD profiles). The Coulter Counter data used were collected by Stewart Bernard. Wind data were supplied by the South African Weather Service (SAWS). A paper was published by Fawcett et al. (2007) focusing on wind forcing on phytoplankton succession using data from 2005, but there is little overlap in the focus of the published paper and Chapter 2 here. The scripts used to illustrate the winds are an adaptation of those used in Fawcett et al (2007), given to me by Jenny Veitch of the Department of Oceanography, University of Cape Town. My role in Chapter 2 was to re-analyse the data in order to predict nitrogen uptake from a satellite-derived bulk property, D_{eff} .
- Data used in Chapter 3 (“An investigation into the use of effective diameter to represent the nitrogen dynamics in diatom-dominated assemblages: The case of Saldanha Bay, South Africa.”) were collected in collaboration with Trevor Probyn and Grant Pitcher of DAFF. I was involved in the collection of *in situ* samples and deploying *in situ* uptake incuba-

tions, laboratory determinations of nutrients and preparation of ^{15}N experiments, Coulter Counter derived particle size distributions and I assisted in determinations of chlorophyll a concentrations. Enumeration of samples for phytoplankton community composition was carried out by Lisa Mansfield (DAFF) and Grant Pitcher.

- Data used in Chapter 4 (“Estimating nitrogen uptake from ambient concentrations and cell size”) come from Chapters 2 and 3. Advice on approach for model development was given to me by Coleen Moloney, who also consistently verified the equations and methods used.

I, Josephine Ffion Atkins, hereby declare that the work on which this thesis is based is my original work (except where indicated otherwise) and that neither the whole work nor any part of it has been, is being, or is to be submitted for another degree in this or any other university. I authorise the University to reproduce for the purpose of research either the whole or any portion of the contents in any manner whatsoever.

Signed by candidate

Signature Removed

Josephine Ffion Atkins
Cape Town, February 2017

Acknowledgments

For academic support and guidance, I am indebted to my supervisors Coleen Moloney, Stewart Bernard and Eric Machu. I am grateful for the guidance and feedback they have given me throughout the progression and wrapping up of this thesis. I feel privileged to have been able to learn from Coleen's example in thought process and rigorous attention to detail. I would also like to thank the anonymous examiners of this thesis for their thorough examination and thought provoking comments.

For data from Lamberts Bay, I thank Trevor Probyn and Grant Pitcher from the Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF). I have thoroughly enjoyed working with them and I am grateful for their extensive guidance during field work in Saldanha Bay. Their collective feedback has been invaluable to my academic development and I warmly acknowledge their contributions to this thesis. Trevor's guidance has been a big highlight during this PhD journey.

For assistance and humour in the field, I gratefully acknowledge Andre du Randt, Lisa Mansfield and Marie Smith.

For funding, I thank the Ma-Re institute, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) and the National Research Foundation (NRF) for their collective financial support. And thank you, both Emlyn Balarin and Gilly Smith, for orchestrating where all the funding came from.

I particularly thank fellow students/graduates Sarah Nicholson, Ceinwen Smith, Maya Pfaff, Hayley Evers-King, Emily McGregor and Otto Whitehead for enjoying the small things with me. Josh Weeber, you've been such a rock. Thank you!

Finally, I wish to thank my family near and far for their love, support and understanding throughout it all. I dedicate this thesis to my parents, Stephen and Cerys Atkins, for always

encouraging my adventures into the natural world. Thank you.

Contents

Declaration	iii
Acknowledgments	v
Abstract	1
1 Phytoplankton, nitrogen and the southern Benguela upwelling system	5
2 Can effective diameter (D_{eff}) capture the nitrogen utilisation by high biomass blooms at upwelling/downwelling timescales?	37
3 An investigation into the use of effective diameter to represent the nitrogen dynamics in diatom-dominated assemblages: The case of Saldanha Bay, South Africa	77
4 Estimating nitrogen uptake from ambient concentrations and cell size	105
5 Summary and conclusions	129
References	141
Appendix	181

1 Abstract

2 Phytoplankton are a key component in the functioning of marine ecosystems and play a cen-
3 tral role in the cycling of nitrogen and other elements. Metrics that can adequately represent
4 the biogeochemical processes associated with phytoplankton diversity are needed in order to
5 make use of remote sensing and modeling platforms. A single-value size proxy, effective di-
6 ameter (D_{eff}), represents the mean volume to surface area ratio across the nano and micro
7 plankton size fraction (2-200 μm) in the southern Benguela, but has yet to be tested regard-
8 ing its biogeochemical relevance. Cell size imposes overarching constraints on phytoplankton
9 metabolism; there are therefore strong grounds for evaluating the usefulness of the metric (D_{eff})
10 in studies of nitrogen dynamics in diverse, natural assemblages. Three case studies were used
11 to explore the nitrogen dynamics in naturally occurring assemblages and to evaluate the rela-
12 tionships between D_{eff} and the uptake of the different sources of nitrogen. Two of the case
13 studies comprised high biomass, harmful algal blooms observed off Lamberts Bay during an
14 upwelling/downwelling cycle. The third case study used bi-monthly sampling over a full year
15 in Saldanha Bay. The Lamberts Bay case studies involved blooms occasionally dominated by
16 HAB-forming species: a mixotrophic ciliate, *Myrionecta rubra*, and a dinoflagellate, *Prorocen-*
17 *trum triestinum*. The nitrogen uptake rates followed the well observed pattern of high nitrate
18 uptake by large cells and regenerated nitrogen uptake by small cells. *Myrionecta rubra* had a
19 wide range of nitrate (NO_3^-) uptake rates (0.02-0.3 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$). *Prorocentrum triestinum*
20 showed slower rates of NO_3^- uptake (0.01-0.2 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$) and dominated in low NO_3^- ,
21 stratified conditions. Diatoms were the most efficient utilisers of NO_3^- and total nitrogen in these
22 cases. The effective diameter was significantly related to the uptake rates of ammonium (NH_4^+)
23 ($r=-0.54$, $p<0.005$) and urea ($r=-0.59$, $p<0.005$), but not NO_3^- ($r=0.27$, $p=0.11$). This was at-

24 tributed to some instances of bi-modality in observed size distributions as well as potentially
25 specialist nutrient uptake strategies employed by diatoms. The year-round data from Saldanha
26 Bay indicated the system was diatom-dominated and was used to assess how well D_{eff} could
27 represent the nitrogen uptake strategies employed by the diverse diatom assemblages. The
28 Saldanha Bay system has NO_3^- limited surface waters during summer, and light-limited bottom
29 waters during winter. No significant relationship was found between D_{eff} and the mass-specific
30 uptake rates of the different nitrogen species in this data set. This was attributed to the complex
31 shapes of the size distributions and the comparatively low biomass observed. Uptake kinetic ex-
32 periments revealed high variability for maximum uptake rates (V_{max}) and half saturation values
33 (K_s) for both NO_3^- and NH_4^+ . For NO_3^- : V_{max} ranged 0.007-0.17 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$, and K_s ranged
34 between 0.2-42.5 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$. For NH_4^+ V_{max} was observed between 0.02-2.7 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$;
35 and K_s values ranged 0.1-14.02 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$. Variability was observed in association with the
36 availability of the ambient sources of nitrogen, but some variation was accounted for by the
37 presence of different diatom species. From these three case studies it was concluded that the
38 single-value size proxy was an adequate metric to quantify the uptake of regenerated nitrogen
39 in scenarios of high biomass algal blooms. Such blooms are a pervasive feature in the southern
40 Benguela Ecosystem. For lower biomass blooms, however, D_{eff} did not adequately represent
41 the nutrient dynamics of diverse diatom-dominated assemblages. The variable shape of the
42 size spectrum is an important factor in determining the rates of nutrient uptake and, in cases
43 of bi- or multi-modality, this information could be lost when represented by a single descriptor
44 such as D_{eff} . It was subsequently hypothesised that size spectra could be used to accurately
45 represent the nitrogen dynamics in diverse phytoplankton assemblages. This was tested by
46 comparing the observed uptake rates of the three case studies to estimated uptake rates based
47 on size spectra. Observed particle size distributions were used to estimate the uptake of NO_3^-
48 and NH_4^+ , based on theoretical relationships to calculate size-dependent values of V_{max} and
49 K_s . Michaelis-Menten models were applied to measured ambient nutrient concentrations and
50 particle size distributions, generating size-integrated estimates of NO_3^- , NH_4^+ and total N uptake
51 rates. The variability in the estimated uptake rates was similar to that of the measured values.

52 It was thus concluded that the representation of phytoplankton diversity by size spectra allowed
53 modification of model parameters, such that improved estimates of uptake rates of NO_3^- and
54 NH_4^+ could be obtained for a dynamic eutrophic environment.

55 Chapter 1

56 **Phytoplankton, nitrogen and the southern** 57 **Benguela upwelling system**

58 Autotrophic phytoplankton are a large and diverse group of unicellular organisms, representing
59 less than 1% of global photosynthetic biomass, but accounting for almost 50% of global pri-
60 mary production (Field et al., 1998). There are at least 25,000 species, spanning eight major
61 phyla (Falkowski et al., 2004) and nine orders of magnitude in cell size (Sieburth et al., 1978;
62 Finkel et al., 2010). The diversity of phytoplankton communities plays a major role in ecosys-
63 tem function and productivity (Ptacnik et al., 2008; Vallina et al., 2014), resilience and stability
64 (McCann, 2000; Vallina and Le Quéré, 2011) and biogeochemistry (Azam and Malfatti, 2007).
65 Understanding ecosystem function in relation to species composition and diversity is an excit-
66 ing area of research in both terrestrial and marine ecology. In recognition of the importance
67 of phytoplankton diversity, significant advances have been made in differentiating between the
68 various phytoplankton communities both from empirical observation, including remote sensing,
69 and modeling methods.

70 Satellite-derived algal products now exist that can define phytoplankton biomass by func-
71 tional group (e.g. Brown and Podestá, 1997; Sathyendranath et al., 2004), dominant size class
72 (e.g. Ciotti et al., 2002; Ciotti and Bricaud, 2006; Uitz et al., 2006; Evers-King et al., 2014) or
73 particle size distributions (Kostadinov et al., 2010). Equally, various forms of biogeochemical
74 models exist that use functional group (e.g. Le Quéré et al., 2005; Dutkiewicz et al., 2009) or

75 cell size (e.g. Moloney et al., 1991; Baird and Suthers, 2007; Banas, 2011; Ward et al., 2012) or
76 both (e.g. Le Quéré et al., 2005; Aumont et al., 2015) to parameterise varying degrees of phy-
77 toplankton diversity. Built on our current, empirical understanding of the relationships between
78 community structure and biogeochemical processes, many questions remain regarding the vari-
79 ability in these empirical relationships at several temporal and spatial scales. The ecological rel-
80 evance of each metric used to represent diverse algal assemblages needs thorough evaluation
81 in relation to the biogeochemical processes in question, especially at the regional/local scale.
82 The primary focus of this research is to establish to what degree simplified size descriptors can
83 represent the functional diversity of algal assemblages and to investigate the minimum infor-
84 mation requirements to adequately represent the principle biogeochemical signals. The size
85 structure of an assemblage is one of the primary means of representing diverse microbial com-
86 munities (Moloney et al., 1991), where the metabolism of a cell is often assumed to be scaled
87 to size (Chisholm, 1992). However, physiological adaptations and plasticity can often weaken
88 the relationships between cell size and phytoplankton metabolism and there is thus a need to
89 explore these relationships further, most notably in assemblages measured in a natural con-
90 text (Litchman et al., 2015). The southern Benguela is considered a useful, natural laboratory
91 for such an endeavour owing to very strong signals from large shifts in phytoplankton popula-
92 tion composition at high biomass. Culture experiments have been instrumental in providing a
93 wealth of knowledge on the variation in physiological mechanisms under controlled conditions,
94 but they lack coherence to realistic environmental gradients and biological interactions. This
95 thesis aimed to test whether representing phytoplankton diversity via cell size and simple size
96 proxies captures the nitrogen dynamics observed in diverse, natural assemblages.

97 **Phytoplankton diversity**

98 Understanding phytoplankton community structure, dynamics and its effect on large scale bio-
99 geochemistry has increasingly become a topical area of current research (see Litchman et al.,
100 2015). Community structure is traditionally characterised by taxonomic distinction, or species

101 richness (number of species), but it has been recognised that nomenclatural approaches to
102 ecology can be cumbersome owing to the branching nature of diversity (Lawton, 1999). More-
103 over, it is the functions performed by communities, i.e. functional diversity (Tilman, 2001), that
104 are required for quantifying biogeochemical cycles. Functional diversity refers to the compo-
105 nents of an ecosystem that influence its stability, productivity, resource dynamics and how it
106 operates (Tilman, 2001). It is further noted that resource dynamics, or nutrient balance, are
107 measured by the rates of supply and loss of resources and the efficiency with which organisms
108 use limiting resources. In diverse communities, each species will have morphological or phys-
109 iological traits that influence species abundance and ultimately ecosystem function. To reduce
110 complexity, Chapin (1997) suggested to focus on the traits with the greatest effect on the func-
111 tioning of an ecosystem, which 1) control acquisition, use and availability of limiting resources,
112 2) modify food-web structure and 3) affect occurrence and magnitude of disturbances.

113 A trait is an element of an organism's phenotype and, in phytoplankton, a trait would be
114 cell size, body mass or stoichiometric ratio (Litchman et al., 2012). In turn, a functional trait is
115 defined as a measurable property of an organism that strongly influences its fitness or perfor-
116 mance (McGill et al., 2006). In phytoplankton, functional traits would include light and nutrient
117 acquisition (Aksnes and Egge, 1991), reproductive strategy (Litchman and Klausmeier, 2008),
118 competition for resources (Tilman et al., 1982; Hibbing et al., 2010) and strategies of predation
119 avoidance (Kjørboe, 2008). Cell size is often observed to be strongly correlated with differ-
120 ent functional traits and has been coined a 'master trait' (Litchman et al., 2007) that governs,
121 to some degree, the functional traits of phytoplankton (Fig. 1.1). The degree of influence is
122 subject to variability and thus requires deeper investigation into locale-specific relationships in
123 natural phytoplankton assemblages in relation to the potential effects of other influential factors.

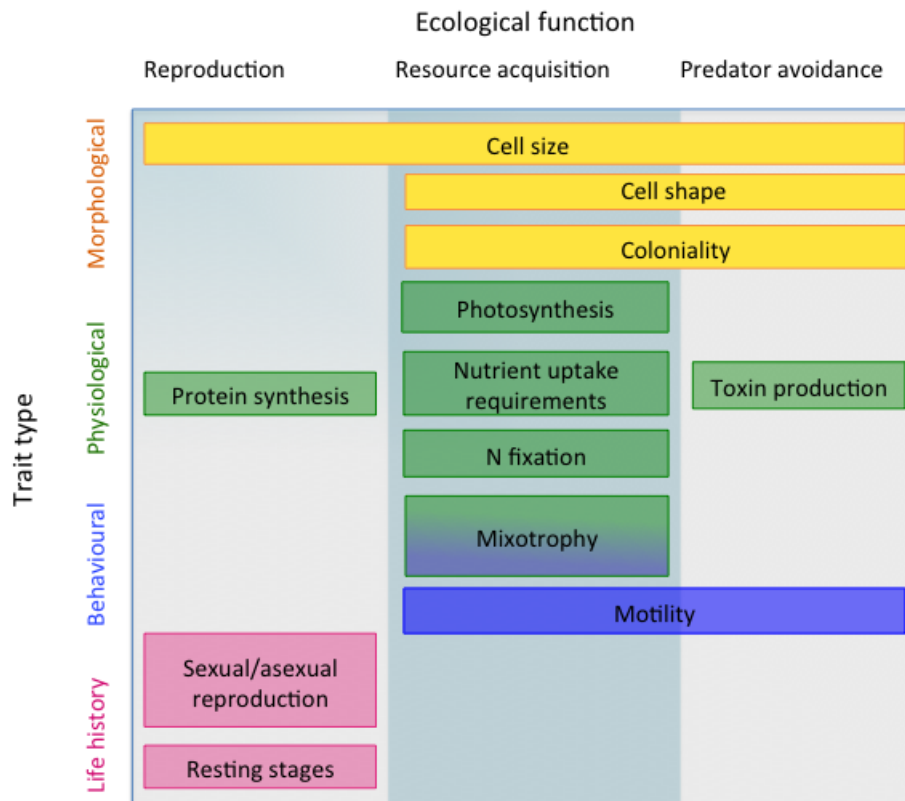


Figure 1.1: Typology of phytoplankton functional traits. Taken from Litchman and Klausmeier (2008).

124 **Phytoplankton community structure**

125 Community structure and diversity are controlled by bottom-up and top-down mechanisms
 126 (Tilman et al., 1982). Bottom-up controlling factors are related to resource limitation (water
 127 chemistry, light, turbulence, temperature) and top-down controlling factors are related to bio-
 128 logical controls such as the physiological characteristics of a species, competition or predation.
 129 The relative strengths of abiotic (bottom-up) and biotic (top-down) controls on natural commu-
 130 nities are scale dependent (Levin, 1992; Hunt and McKinnell, 2006) and can vary by location
 131 (e.g. Matson, 1992; Hunter and Price, 2012).

132 Phytoplankton functional groups, functional types and guilds are all terms used in the litera-
 133 ture when describing phytoplankton communities in an ecological and biogeochemical context.
 134 Functional groups are traditionally defined by morphology or phylogenetic class, e.g. diatoms,

135 dinoflagellates, coccolithophores, and have been the foundation of phytoplankton ecology and
 136 studies of community succession. Earlier studies into phytoplankton succession found a distinc-
 137 tion in habitat preference by phytoplankton, based on an r versus K selection gradient (Margalef
 138 et al., 1979). r -selection occurs in unstable environments and there is little advantage in adapta-
 139 tions that permit successful competition, and K -selection predominates in stable environments
 140 where the ability to compete for limited resources is crucial. A seminal conceptual model (Mar-
 141 galef et al., 1979) defined two groups (diatoms and dinoflagellates) according to their preference
 142 for physical disturbance and nutrient supply (Fig. 1.2). Diatoms are defined as r -selected; able
 143 to withstand high turbulence levels and requiring high nutrient concentrations. Dinoflagellates
 144 are considered to be K -selected; employing turbulence-avoidance strategies and requiring re-
 145 duced nutrients. There are other important groups not considered in this conceptual model (e.g.
 146 coccolithophorids, *Phaeocystis* spp.), which also does not consider the effects of grazing. Re-
 147 gardless, this model has been seminal in phytoplankton ecology and spurred further conceptual
 148 models of light dependency in phytoplankton succession (e.g. Reynolds, 1989) and models of
 149 harmful algal blooms (Smayda and Reynolds, 2001).

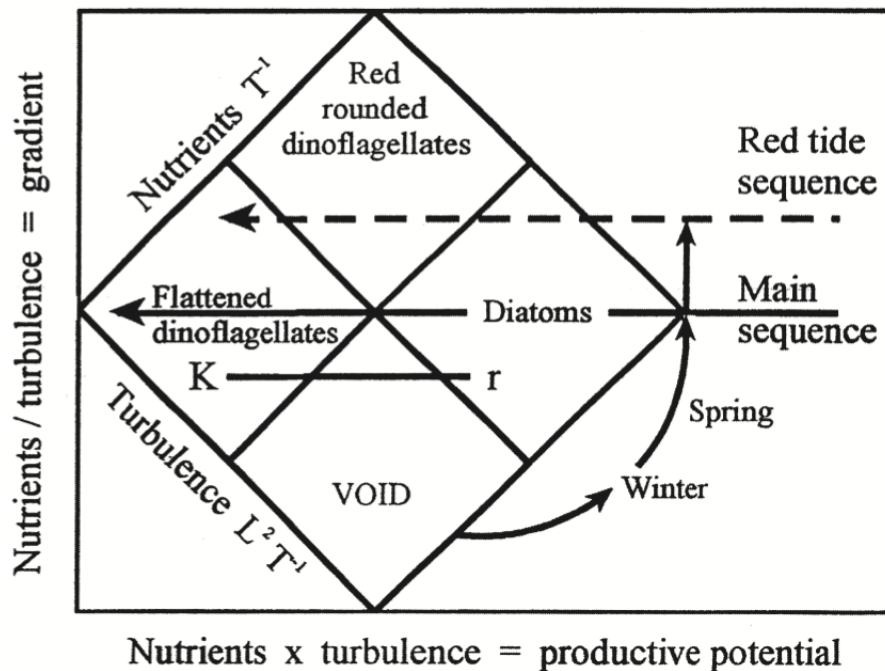


Figure 1.2: Margalef's Mandala showing the gradients of turbulence and nutrient supply favouring diatoms and dinoflagellates. Taken from (Margalef et al., 1979)

150 Phytoplankton Functional Types (PFTs) are defined as groups of organisms with an explicit
151 biogeochemical role, determined by a distinct set of physiological traits and environmental re-
152 quirements (Le Quéré et al., 2005). This classification is irrespective of taxonomic affiliation
153 and comes from a biogeochemical perspective e.g. N₂ fixers, calcifiers, DMS-producers and
154 silicifiers, and has become a more common classification in the modeling and remote sensing
155 literature. Defining functional types requires a sound understanding of how a diversity of cells
156 take up and assimilate nutrients under different conditions and their roles in the ecosystem. In
157 keeping with terrestrial advances in studies of community ecology (McGill et al., 2006; Westoby
158 and Wright, 2006), functional diversity and physiological trait-based approaches in phytoplank-
159 ton dynamics (e.g. Litchman and Klausmeier, 2008; Smith et al., 2015) are increasingly being
160 used to represent the diversity of phytoplankton and their function in the marine environment
161 (e.g. Armstrong, 2006; Bruggeman and Kooijman, 2007; Pahlow et al., 2008; Merico et al.,
162 2009; Follows and Dutkiewicz, 2011; Ward et al., 2012; Levy et al., 2015).

163 **Platforms of study**

164 The marine modeling community is faced with the task of choosing the appropriate represen-
165 tation of diverse plankton communities that can reflect the biogeochemical and ecological pro-
166 cesses in response to climate change (Follows and Dutkiewicz, 2011; Prowe et al., 2014). Bio-
167 geochemical models have evolved from the simple nutrient-phytoplankton-zooplankton-detritus
168 (NPZD) models (e.g. Steele, 1954; Fasham et al., 1990) to differentiate the phytoplankton com-
169 partment into functional groups (e.g. Moore et al., 2002; Gregg et al., 2003; Follows et al.,
170 2007), different size fractions (e.g. Moloney and Field, 1989; Baird and Suthers, 2007; Banas,
171 2011; Ward et al., 2012) or a combination of both (Le Quéré et al., 2005; Aumont et al., 2015).
172 By extrapolating laboratory and *in situ* observations of the environmental gradients that select
173 for different phytoplankton, our conceptual understanding of global primary productivity and
174 phytoplankton dynamics has greatly improved in recent years from functional group modeling
175 approaches. Such an understanding does not come without certain challenges and uncer-
176 tainty however, and it has been noted that simply increasing the resolution of phytoplankton

177 groups/types in biogeochemical models will not necessarily lead to more accurate understand-
178 ing/predictions of ecosystem function (Anderson, 2005; Nair et al., 2008; Thingstad et al., 2010;
179 Follows and Dutkiewicz, 2011). As resolution increases, so do the number of parameters and
180 their associated uncertainties, which currently cannot be constrained within the available cul-
181 tured or *in situ* observations (Ward et al., 2010). It was also suggested by Ward et al. (2010)
182 that more information on the PFT distributions and their response to biotic and abiotic factors is
183 needed to improve models. Culture experiments are able to quantify the response of cultured
184 phytoplankton to isolated and controlled environmental variables, but they lack coherence to
185 realistic environmental dynamics and interactions within the system. Equally, the relationships
186 used to parameterise global models are often extrapolated for circumstances very different
187 from their origin, highlighting the need for continued research into empirical relationships that
188 are specific to a local context.

189 Remote sensing provides invaluable archives of routine, global and synoptic information on
190 the distributions of phytoplankton communities and many studies rely on satellite information
191 for comparison with outputs from models (e.g. Anderson, 2005; Doney et al., 2009). Measure-
192 ments from satellites can capture variability which *in situ* studies cannot due to their limited
193 temporal and spatial sampling scales (Joint and Groom, 2000). Both cell size and pigment
194 composition affect spectral characteristics of phytoplankton absorption (Sathyendranath et al.,
195 1987) and this has allowed the development of a variety of algorithms beyond gross biomass
196 proxies, such as chlorophyll a (Chl-*a*) concentrations (McClain, 2009), to provide some lim-
197 ited functional type descriptors. As in many biogeochemical models, ocean color satellite data
198 can potentially be used to differentiate between PFTs (Alvain et al., 2005, 2008; Raitsos et al.,
199 2008), phytoplankton size classes (Ciotti and Bricaud, 2006; Uitz et al., 2006; Hirata et al., 2008;
200 Brewin et al., 2011) or particle size distributions (Kostadinov et al., 2009, 2010).

201 There are several methods in current use to derive phytoplankton community structure on
202 a global basis from spectral-based and abundance-based approaches (Brewin et al., 2011),
203 with several other approaches used regionally (Bernard et al., 2009; Evers-King et al., 2014).
204 Global-type spectral approaches are typically based on relationships between pigment data

205 derived from High Pressure Liquid Chromatography (HPLC) and spectral characteristics of
206 Chl-*a*-normalised water-leaving radiance (Alvain et al., 2012). Spectral characteristics of the
207 reflectance signal can be attributed to certain groups; e.g. *Phaeocystis*, diatoms, *Prochloro-*
208 *coccus*, or nano phytoplankton (e.g. Alvain et al., 2005; 2008). Further, variations in the
209 spectral shape can be defined either by dominant size class using absorption signals (Ciotti
210 and Bricaud, 2006; Mouw and Yoder, 2005) or by particle size distributions using backscat-
211 tering signals (Kostadinov, 2009; 2010). Alternatively, abundance-based methods assume a
212 change in size structure with a change in Chl-*a* concentrations (Uitz et al., 2006; Brewin et al.,
213 2010; Hirata et al., 2011), based on empirical observed relationships between cell size and as-
214 semblage biomass (as indexed by Chl-*a*). Such approaches appear to perform adequately for
215 certain large scale ecologically-driven community shifts (e.g. the North Atlantic spring bloom
216 as observed by Alvain et al., 2008). However in diverse assemblages of multiple size classes
217 or PFTs, it becomes more difficult to differentiate between them (Brewin et al., 2011). Such
218 approaches are unsuitable for application to coastal/productive waters such as the southern
219 Benguela, as they only address a limited range in biomass (Bernard et al., 2009).

220 There is uncertainty and unquantified errors in deriving PFTs, size classes or distributions
221 from each algorithm, opening up exciting avenues of research into validation and improving the
222 accuracy of the products available from satellite data. The choice of metric to represent the
223 community largely depends on its application and the processes in question. Phytoplankton
224 community dynamics are well known to have distinct characteristics between basins (Barton
225 et al., 2010, 2013), with latitude (Ward, 2015) and between open ocean and coastal areas
226 (Acevedo-Trejos et al., 2015). There is thus a need to assess the metrics that are used to
227 represent the diverse assemblages in a regional/local context, and parameterisations that are
228 constrained by and evaluated for realistic scenarios at a local scale. There are several traits, or
229 dimensions of diversity (Dutkiewicz et al., 2016), that could be used as a currency to test how
230 well the available metrics fare in representing the functional diversity of algal assemblages, e.g.
231 biogeochemical function, accessory pigments, thermal niche, predation protection/avoidance,
232 chain/colony formation or mixotrophy (e.g. Follows et al., 2007; Dutkiewicz et al., 2009). This

thesis focuses on cell size and nutrient uptake, as they are often measured *in situ*, with a comparatively sound understanding of the variability in their relationship and their individual dynamics.

Nutrient uptake and Growth

Two separate empirical equations are considered here that are used to define nutrient-limited growth rate, μ . One expresses μ as a function of S, the external nutrient concentration (Monod, 1949):

$$\mu = \mu_{max} \frac{S}{K_{\mu} + S} \quad (1.1)$$

where μ is a specific growth rate, μ_{max} is the maximum specific growth rate and K_{μ} is the half saturation constant for growth. This assumes that growth rate and uptake rate (V) are coupled (Dugdale, 1967). However, it has been recognised that μ_{max} and maximum uptake rate (V_{max}) are not always balanced in natural, non-steady state conditions (Sommer, 1985). This is evidenced by “luxury uptake” (Sommer, 1984), where growth exceeds uptake rates under nutrient limitation (i.e. nutrient storage during fluctuating nutrient supply); and “surge uptake” in nutrient starved cells (Glibert and Goldman, 1981; Collos et al., 1997), where relative uptake rates can far exceed growth rates. Droop (1973) hypothesised that growth rate was a function of intracellular rather than external nutrient concentrations. The Droop formulation for phytoplankton growth expresses μ as a function of internal concentration, the amount of nutrient per cell or cellular quota (Q)

$$\mu = \mu_{\infty} \frac{Q - K_Q}{Q} \quad (1.2)$$

where μ_{∞} is specific growth rate when cell quota (Q) is infinite and K_Q is the Q under which $\mu=0$. Q (N cell⁻¹), the cellular quota, is defined as the cellular nutrient to carbon ratio, calculated from the relationship between cellular nutrient uptake rate normalised to cell carbon and the cell division rate (Sunda et al., 2009).

255 These two equations constitute some major differences in ecosystem models which use
256 either Monod or Droop equations to express population growth rates. Monod has been the
257 traditional formulation as parameter values are widely available in the literature and it is less
258 computationally expensive than Droop. Some global models (e.g. Aumont et al., 2015), origi-
259 nally Monod, have now incorporated an internal quota model for certain nutrients, such as iron
260 in the case of PISCES (Aumont et al., 2015). Monod and Droop formulations have often yielded
261 different predictions of nutrient concentrations, C:N ratios and phytoplankton dynamics (Sunda
262 et al., 2009).

263 In systems with highly variable nutrient supply, the ability of a cell to store nitrogen (Eppley
264 and Rogers, 1970; Collos and Slawyk, 1976) is critical to sustain phytoplankton growth rates
265 (Dortch, 1982). The ability of diatoms to store nitrate (Dortch et al., 1984) is one explanation
266 for their proliferation in upwelling areas where nitrate supplies are highly fluctuating. Droop for-
267 mulations are more complex than Monod, where mass balances for internal nutrient pools are
268 driven by available nutrient concentrations in the water column and internal nutrient concentra-
269 tions, as well as uptake and growth rates that vary with these concentrations (Cerucci et al.,
270 2010).

271 Nutrient uptake rates are expressed as Michaelis-Menten kinetics:

$$V = \frac{V_{max} * S}{K_s + S} \quad (1.3)$$

272 where V_{max} is the maximum nutrient uptake rate, S is the substrate concentration at the cell
273 surface and K_s is the half-saturation constant for nutrient uptake. V_{max} will give an indication
274 of high/low competitive advantage at relative high/low concentrations. Species with low half
275 saturation constants are able to efficiently take up nutrients at low substrate concentrations.
276 As these two parameters are essential to estimating nutrient dependent growth rates, much
277 research has focused on defining species/group level values.

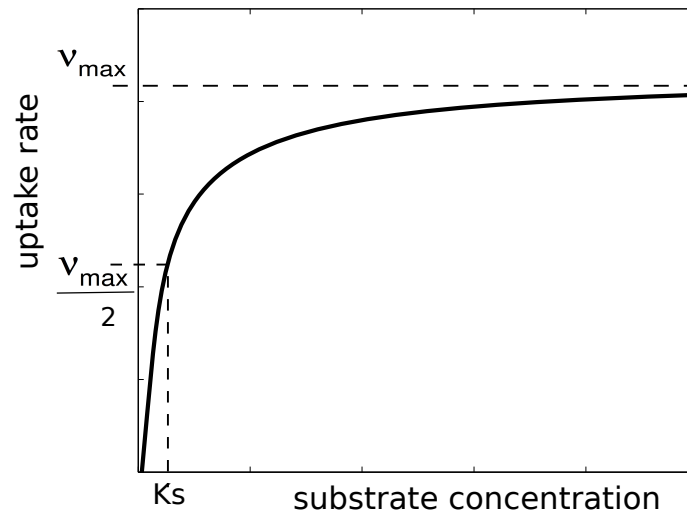


Figure 1.3: Michaelis-Menten hyperbola as described in Eq. 3 where V_{max} is the maximum uptake rate at increasing substrate concentration, and K_s is the substrate concentration at which half the V_{max} is achieved.

278 The influence of allometry

279 The relationship between body mass/size and metabolic rate is known as allometry and is
 280 widely used in many facets of terrestrial (e.g. West et al., 1997; Brown et al., 2004) and marine
 281 ecology (e.g. Chisholm, 1992; Litchman and Klausmeier, 2008; Edwards et al., 2012). It is well
 282 observed that phytoplankton cell size influences nutrient acquisition (Probyn, 1985; Stolte and
 283 Riegman, 1995; Litchman et al., 2007) and other metabolic rates (Chisholm, 1992; Kiørboe,
 284 1993, Brown et al., 2004) which influence food web structure (Moloney and Field, 1989; Laws
 285 et al., 2000; Finkel et al., 2007), and biogeochemical cycling (Laws et al., 2000). The general
 286 allometric equation is as follows:

$$R = aM^b \quad (1.4)$$

287 where R can be one of many metabolic rates, M is body mass, a the rate coefficient which
 288 varies depending on different major groups of organisms (i.e. homeotherms, heterotherms or
 289 unicells), and b is a relatively constant size-scaling parameter. Moloney and Field (1989) noted
 290 considerable debate regarding the range of values for b , and so based on data from literature,

291 body masses, log transformed rate processes and regression estimates, they proposed a value
292 of -0.25. Taxonomic differences (Moloney and Field, 1989; Cermeño et al., 2006), phenotypic
293 and physiological plasticity (Brown et al., 2004) and environmental conditions such as temper-
294 atures, irradiance and nutrient concentrations influence the size scaling slopes and intercept of
295 this equation. A recent study (Lindemann et al., 2016) of the affinities for nutrients suggested
296 that the slopes may also vary between small and large cells. This was attributed to the costs
297 incurred by small cells investing energy into nutrient transporter sites on the cell wall.

298 Chisholm (1992) reviewed the relationship between size/respiration and size/growth rate. In
299 terms of respiration, the relationship was inconclusive owing to a paucity of data, with argu-
300 ments for a -0.25 scaling exponent (Banse, 1975) or a very weak relationship (Falkowski and
301 Owens, 1978). For growth rates, the intricacies between and within phylogenetic morphotypes
302 (i.e. diatoms and dinoflagellates) complicate the application of the simple allometric equation
303 mentioned above. Chisholm (1992) noted that diatoms grow three times faster than dinoflagel-
304 lates of equal size and even the maximum growth rate (μ_{max}) of a given species within diatoms
305 can vary by a factor of two (Platt, 1985). The size dependence of growth rates in phytoplankton
306 as a group, according to Chisholm (1992) is weak. Tang (1995) found the scaling exponent
307 is not affected by taxonomic affiliation, but that mean growth rates do differ between certain
308 divisions. Nevertheless the influence of cell size on nutrient uptake rates is stronger than other
309 metabolic rates owing to first principles of surface area to volume ratios (Banse, 1975).

310 Despite the observed variability within an allometric framework, the biogeography of domi-
311 nant size classes illustrates a clear dependence of cell size distributions on nutrient availability.
312 It is fairly well established that there is a constant background of pico-plankton ($< 2\mu m$) with
313 the proliferation of larger cells as nutrient supply increases (Chisholm, 1992; Agawin et al.,
314 2000; Barnes et al., 2011). This is seen between oligotrophic and eutrophic areas (Acevedo-
315 Trejos et al., 2013) and more locally, at upwelling/downwelling timescales (Pitcher et al., 1991;
316 Mitchell-Innes and Pitcher, 1992; Kiørboe, 1993). These patterns in the biogeography of particle
317 size distributions (PSD) are well marked in global maps derived from PSD algorithms applied
318 to satellite ocean color (Hirata et al., 2008; Kostadinov et al., 2010; Brewin et al., 2010). Large

319 cell sizes are concentrated around eutrophic areas of high nutrient supply, whereas nutrient
 320 depleted, oligotrophic areas are associated with an absence of large cells (Fig. 1.4).

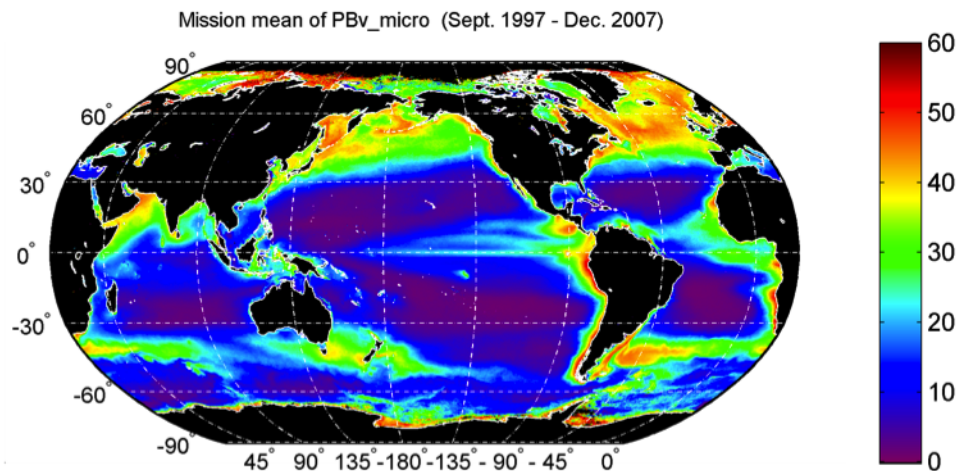


Figure 1.4: The percent volume concentration contribution of micro-plankton (20-50µm) to total particle size distributions (PSD). Details of calculations in Kostadinov (2009, 2010). Micro-plankton only found in upwelling and high latitude areas, contributing <60% to total PSD. Taken from Kostadinov et al. (2010) fig. 5C

321 Based on allometric relationships, theoretically, the rate at which nutrients are transferred
 322 to higher trophic levels or sequestered to depth should be quantifiable by the size structure of
 323 the phytoplankton community and is a tenet explored further in chapter 4. It is clear that size
 324 has an overarching influence on metabolic rates, more specifically on uptake rates. However,
 325 there are several other important factors that may influence nutrient uptake, such as light or
 326 nutrient-limitation (Maclsaac and Dugdale, 1972), inherent taxonomic differences (Platt, 1985),
 327 physiological status and plasticity (Bonachela et al., 2011) and nutrient prehistory. Given that
 328 many studies of the size dependence of nutrient uptake come from culture experiments (with
 329 exceptions: e.g. Furnas, 1983; Riegman et al., 1998; Probyn and Painting, 1985; Probyn et al.,
 330 1990; Bury et al., 2001), there are few studies that focus on the compounding effects of all vari-
 331 ables on nutrient uptake, in a natural system. The interdisciplinary nature of such an approach
 332 is challenging, owing to the interactions between variables at several timescales (Levin, 1992).
 333 Equally, measured rates are the sum of many influences and disentangling the effects of each
 334 influence (in a natural system) is inherently challenging. Inevitable questions arise when nutri-
 335 ent uptake is considered in the context of natural assemblages. At what point does allometry

336 become too broad to accurately quantify mechanistic processes such as nutrient uptake and
337 transfer? And when should differences in functional group/type be taken into account? More
338 specifically to nitrogen, can an allometric approach be effectively used for all (or any) of the
339 different nitrogen components in a variety of phytoplankton assemblages?

340 V_{max} and K_s as functional traits

341 The ability to compete for nutrients in a given habitat, and the strategy employed by the organ-
342 ism/group of organisms is considered a key trait that drives species succession (Margalef et al.,
343 1979). Relative values of V_{max} and K_s for a given nutrient are suggested to predict the com-
344 petitive advantage of a species and are considered key functional traits of resource utilisation
345 as they directly affect the organism fitness and efficiency (Litchman and Klausmeier, 2008). A
346 low K_s implies an ability to take up nutrients at low concentrations and a high K_s indicates a
347 requirement for high concentrations. A high V_{max} is considered a competitive advantage when
348 nutrients are at high concentrations. Sommer (1989) classified low K_s species as 'affinity strate-
349 gists' and species with a high V_{max} as 'growth strategists'. However, Healey (1980) suggested
350 that the ratio between V_{max} and K_s , known as the affinity (α), is a better indicator of nutrient
351 uptake efficiency:

$$\alpha = \frac{V_{max}}{K_s} \quad (1.5)$$

352 Small phytoplankton are more efficient at taking up nutrients at low concentrations due to
353 their low K_s , and this is often used to explain why small cells dominate in nutrient limited condi-
354 tions (Eppley et al., 1969; Aksnes and Egge, 1991; Hein et al., 1995). Large phytoplankton, on
355 the other hand, are seen to dominate eutrophic areas of high nutrient supply (Acevedo-Trejos
356 et al., 2013) and they are observed to have high K_s and high V_{max} . Essentially, competitive
357 ability for nutrient uptake declines as cell size increases (Edwards et al., 2012).

358 An often asked question is whether V_{max} and K_s values that have predominantly come
359 from culture experiments can be used to accurately assess phytoplankton responses in natural
360 conditions (Harris, 1980; Sommer, 1989; Collos et al., 2005; Litchman et al., 2015). Edwards

et al. (2013) found that using lab-based traits effectively predicted the variation in community structure in response to seasonal fluctuations in the English Channel. Values of K_s and V_{max} can vary substantially within groups and are sensitive to environmental conditions.

Variations in V_{max} and K_s

Uptake parameters are often assumed constant for the phytoplankton compartments in many plankton-based models. However, it is recognised that high variance in uptake parameters is observed within and between functional groups (Litchman et al., 2007; Edwards et al., 2012), under variable nutrient concentrations (Collos et al., 2003) and variable temperatures (Aksnes and Egge, 1991; Lomas and Glibert, 1999). V_{max} and K_s are also seen to vary with cell size (Fig. 1.5), where both have a positive correlation with cell volume, although half saturation constants are observed to be less constrained by cell volume (Edwards et al., 2012).

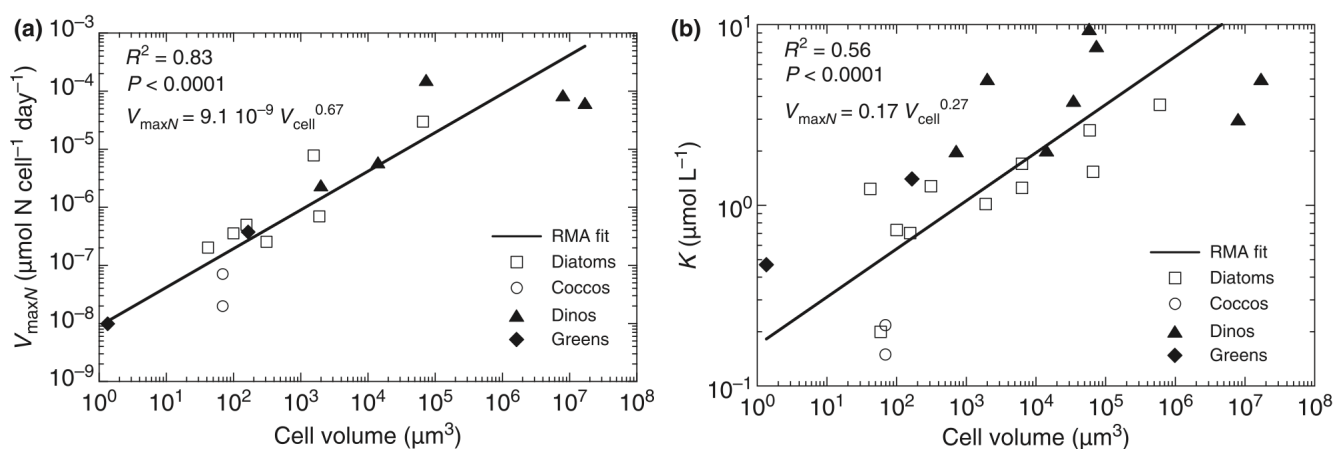


Figure 1.5: Taken from Litchman et al. (2012), the relationships between cell volume and a) V_{max} and b) K_s of nitrogen. Different groups (diatoms, coccolithophorids, dinoflagellates and green algae) are represented by different markers. Relationships are highly significant ($p < 0.0001$) for both V_{max} and K_s .

The nutrient prehistory and physiological status of the cell have been observed to change uptake parameters. Harrison et al. (1996) observed an increase in V_{max} in nitrogen-starved batch cultures. The effect of nitrogen starvation is understood to be dependent on the nitrogen source, nutrient prehistory and duration of starvation (Collos, 1980). Furthermore, not all nutrient uptake kinetics can be described by the Michaelis-Menten equation. Several studies (Collos et al., 1992; Watt et al., 1992; Collos et al., 1997; Lomas and Glibert, 1999) observed

378 the non-saturating nature of uptake kinetics, where linear or bi-phasic uptake occurred. It has
379 been suggested that non-saturating behaviour of uptake kinetics (and thus deviation from the
380 typical Michaelis-Menten kinetics) is due to the uncoupling of growth and uptake and internal
381 storage of nitrogen (McCarthy and Goldman, 1979; Lomas and Glibert, 1999). As previously
382 described (eq. 1.2), nutrient uptake and growth are separated by making cellular growth de-
383 pendent on the internal stores of nutrients (Droop, 1973). It is recognised however that this
384 formulation does not account for phenotypic plasticity or physiological acclimation in response
385 to highly fluctuating environmental conditions. Physiological acclimation can take many forms,
386 but in the case for nutrient uptake, has been described by Smith et al. (2009) as the trade off in
387 investing energy into the different mechanisms required for resource assimilation. Two mech-
388 anisms are at play here: 1) nutrient encounter at the cell surface by altering surface uptake
389 sites (ion channels) or 2) internal enzymes, which assimilate nutrient ions once encountered.
390 Several other models aim to incorporate an organisms' ability to dynamically rearrange their
391 physiology to make most efficient use of their resources (e.g. Bruggeman and Kooijman, 2007;
392 Litchman and Klausmeier, 2008). Flexible trait-based approaches are becoming increasingly
393 used to model plankton ecosystems (Follows and Dutkiewicz, 2011; Smith et al., 2011) and sev-
394 eral studies have shown that accounting for optimal intracellular resource allocation results in
395 better agreement with laboratory (Pahlow, 2005; Wirtz and Pahlow, 2010; Pahlow et al., 2013)
396 and *in situ* experiments (Smith et al., 2015). Scaling up from cellular processes to large scale
397 dynamics is where the challenge lies for such modeling approaches and is an active area of
398 research.

399 **The role of nitrogen**

400 Nitrogen is an important limiting resource in biological productivity and occupies a central role in
401 the cycling of all other elements. Nitrogen is present in many forms, each of which has complex
402 pathways and interactions with one another. Thus many uncertainties remain in the nitrogen
403 cycle regarding the interactions between the different nitrogen forms, the environment and bi-

404 ological drivers. In the marine environment, phytoplankton are principal drivers in transporting
405 available fixed nitrogen to the biotic components of the system. In turn, the relative contribu-
406 tion of the different nitrogen sources to the total nitrogen inventory can, to some extent, dictate
407 the composition of phytoplankton communities (Glibert et al., 2014). Nitrogen in its oxidised
408 form, nitrate (NO_3^-), is often associated with diatom assemblages (Collos et al 1992; 1997;
409 Berg et al., 2003; Collos et al., 2005) and reduced nitrogen, NH_4^+ , is observed in association
410 with other taxa including cyanobacteria and dinoflagellates (Berg et al., 2003). The nitrogen
411 source can also regulate the contribution of the different size fractions to total phytoplankton
412 biomass, with a constant background of small cells ($<10 \mu\text{m}$ in diameter) in nitrogen deplete
413 conditions and large cell sizes ($>10 \mu\text{m}$) appearing in concert with increasing NO_3^- availability
414 (Probyn, 1985; Chisholm, 1992). The vast diversity in phytoplankton plays a critical role in the
415 rates at which nitrogen, and thus carbon and other elements, flows through marine ecosystems
416 and yet, phytoplankton diversity remains a major challenge in studies that aim to realistically
417 quantify nitrogen dynamics.

418 **Forms of nitrogen**

419 Dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN) (NH_4^+ , NO_3^- , NO_2^-) is the form in which nitrogen is mostly
420 taken up by phytoplankton. The nitrogen compound is transported across the cell wall via
421 uptake/transporter sites, metabolised and stored in a variety of compounds, i.e. nitrate, ammo-
422 nium, amino acids, proteins, DNA/RNA and pigments (Rhee, 1978). The principle source of
423 nitrate in the ocean is nitrification, which usually occurs at depth, whereby ammonium (NH_4^+)
424 is oxidised to nitrite (NO_2^-) and then to nitrate (NO_3^-). This is carried out by nitrifying bacteria
425 in low oxygenated waters at depth, and in coastal areas these nitrate-rich waters are brought
426 to the surface via vertical transport, e.g. upwelling. The major source of NH_4^+ is the transfor-
427 mation of organic nitrogen to ammonium via ammonification, a process usually carried out by
428 heterotrophic bacteria. The residence times of oxidised (NO_3^-) or reduced (NH_4^+) forms of nitro-
429 gen differ substantially, with turnover rates for NH_4^+ being substantially quicker (Gruber, 2008).
430 NH_4^+ is taken up almost as quickly as it is released, as it is considered to be the preferred

431 source of fixed nitrogen (McCarthy et al., 1977; Dortch, 1990). NH_4^+ is already in a reduced
432 state and requires little energy for assimilation (Syrett, 1981; Zehr and Ward, 2002). Nitrate
433 assimilation is energetically more expensive than NH_4^+ , as it must first be reduced to NO_2^- using
434 nitrate reductase (NR) and then further reduced to NH_4^+ , using nitrite reductase enzyme (NiR).
435 Dissolved organic nitrogen (DON) (urea, amino acids, peptides/proteins) is also an important
436 source of nitrogen for phytoplankton (Mulholland and Lomas, 2008). Urea, the simplest DON
437 compound, is the most commonly measured uptake of DON and requires the enzyme urease
438 for assimilation into the cell (Mulholland and Lomas, 2008). Urea can contribute over 50% of
439 total N uptake in some coastal systems (Glibert et al., 1991).

440 New production is associated with nitrate (NO_3^-) uptake and regenerated production with the
441 uptake of ammonium (NH_4^+) and urea (Dugdale and Goering, 1967). The relative ratio of nitrate
442 to total nitrogen uptake is known as the *f*-ratio (Eppley and Peterson, 1979) and is often used to
443 estimate the export of nitrogen. The *f*-ratio can also be considered a measure of the distinction
444 between physically (upwelled) and biologically (regenerated) mediated sources of nitrogen for
445 primary productivity (Probyn, 1985). New production, indicated by high *f*-ratios, is considered
446 to be the portion of production with the highest implications for carbon export or the flow of
447 energy to higher trophic levels (Probyn, 1992). In upwelling systems, the transfer of energy to
448 higher trophic levels is believed to be much more efficient when NO_3^- is the source of primary
449 production (Hutchings, 1992; Probyn, 1992).

450 **Pathways of nitrogen**

451 The need to assess the relationships between cell size and nutrient uptake rates, in natural
452 assemblages, becomes apparent when considered in the context of quantifying nitrogen flux
453 in diverse communities of phytoplankton and its potential application to studies of the path-
454 ways of nitrogen to higher trophic levels. Based on well established size-spectrum theory (Kerr,
455 1974), the transfer of carbon/nitrogen to higher trophic levels follows some relation to the size
456 distribution of plankton communities (e.g. Sheldon et al., 1972; Andersen and Beyer, 2006).
457 In the southern Benguela, small pelagic fish such as sardine (*Sardinops sagax*) and anchovy

458 (*Engraulis encrasicolus*) are key species in the ecosystem, as they play an important role in
 459 mediating the transfer of energy from lower to higher trophic levels (Cury et al., 2000). The
 460 contribution of each of these species to total catches is subject to inter-annual variability and
 461 alternations between the two are suggested to be associated with environments that favour
 462 one species over another (van der Lingen et al., 2006). The shifting regimes between strong
 463 upwelling-favourable, and relaxed downwelling-favourable winds, which consequently drive the
 464 structure of plankton communities, are hypothesised to select for either sardine or anchovy
 465 (Shannon et al., 2004) (Fig. 1.6). The relevance of the different phytoplankton communities
 466 to pelagic ecosystem structure is clear, and although figure 1.6 is not purely size based, char-
 467 acterising the system by means of size-spectrum theory is an attractive alternative. Accurate
 468 representations of the effects of the nitrogen source on phytoplankton size structure is a good
 469 foundation for further studies into nitrogen flux in marine food-webs.

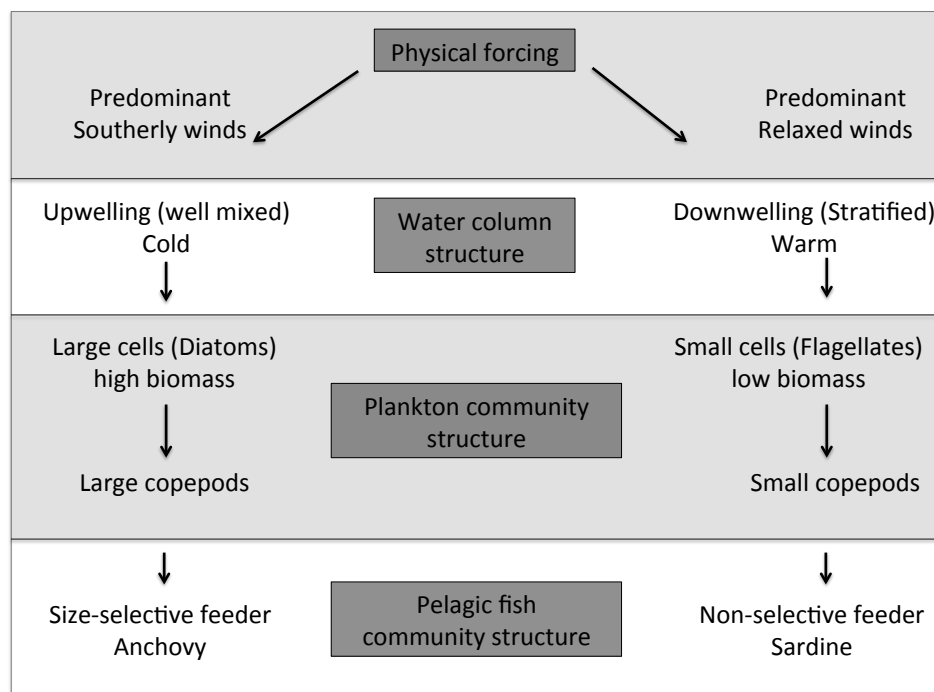


Figure 1.6: Schematic of conceptual model of physical forcing. Adapted from Van der Lingen et al. (2006)

470 The cellular content of nitrogen and its ratio to other essential elements such as carbon,
 471 phosphorous, silicon and iron (i.e. elemental stoichiometry), can also have consequences for
 472 grazers higher up the food chain (Lind and Jeyasingh, 2015). In a review by Glibert (2012), em-

473 phasis was placed on the importance of algal stoichiometry in altering food-webs. For grazers, it
474 is the nutritional value (i.e. C:N:P ratios), rather than reproduction rate, that is key to grazer pop-
475 ulation success (Finkel et al., 2010; Glibert, 2012). It is well recognised that algal stoichiometry
476 can vary markedly from the previously accepted Redfield ratios of 160C:16N:1P (Hecky et al.,
477 1993; Geider and La Roche, 2002), with varying environmental conditions (nutrient limitation
478 and nutrient saturation) and the community structure present (Glibert et al., 2013). In terms of
479 cell size, larger cells have storage vacuoles to account for fluctuations in nutrient supply and
480 will often have an excess of cellular concentrations of certain nutrients. In an upwelling envi-
481 ronment it is most notably NO_3^- that will be stored and thus, in general, large cells will have a
482 higher N:C ratio than small cells, whose nutrient requirements are much lower and can maintain
483 growth at low nutrient concentrations. Increases in cellular vacuolation, and thus cell size, have
484 been observed to occur in conjunction with changes in elemental stoichiometry of the substrate
485 environment (Raven, 1997; Finkel et al., 2010). In turn, certain predators are selected for by
486 the particular C:N:P ratios of their prey. Certain deviations from the Redfield ratio have been
487 quantified from a species perspective (see Geider and La Roche, 2002; Michaels et al., 2001;
488 Lind and Jeyasingh, 2015), but in terms of cell size the relationships are less well understood.
489 Although it is recognised that C:N and N:P ratios play a significant role in the pathways of nitro-
490 gen flow by grazer and predator selection of nutrition, and quantifying the role of cell size would
491 be a useful area of research, it is beyond the theme of the research proposed herein.

492 **Southern Benguela Ecosystem**

493 The Eastern Boundary Upwelling Systems (EBUS) are among the most productive of marine
494 ecosystems (Ryther, 1969) and nitrogen is a key limiting resource of primary productivity in
495 such systems (Dugdale, 1967; Ryther and Dunstan, 1971; Wilkerson and Dugdale, 2008).
496 Alongshore, upwelling-favourable winds force surface waters offshore, inducing upwelling of
497 nutrient-rich deep waters to the well-illuminated, surface coastal zone. Upwelling-favourable
498 winds are forced predominantly by two mechanisms: Hadley cells which influence atmospheric

499 pressure systems over the ocean (Diaz and Bradley, 2005) and local thermodynamics of land-
500 sea temperature contrasts (Bakun, 1990). The Intergovernmental Panel for Climate Change
501 (IPCC) reports a likely increase in the intensity of wind-stress in upwelling systems (Bakun
502 et al., 2015) and recent observations of EBUS generally support this notion (Sydeman et al.,
503 2014). In the southern Benguela (Fig. 1.7), Rouault et al. (2010) found a cooling trend between
504 1982 and 2009 in near-shore sea surface temperatures (SST), which they attributed to an in-
505 crease in upwelling-favourable winds. Several studies have assessed long term trends in Chl-*a*
506 concentrations from *in situ* observations (Verheye, 2000; Hutchings et al., 2009) and SeaWiFS
507 data (Demarcq et al., 2007) but no clear trend is observed. Moloney et al. (2013) noted that
508 we still have a limited understanding of how phytoplankton community structure and primary
509 production might respond to changes in local forcing.

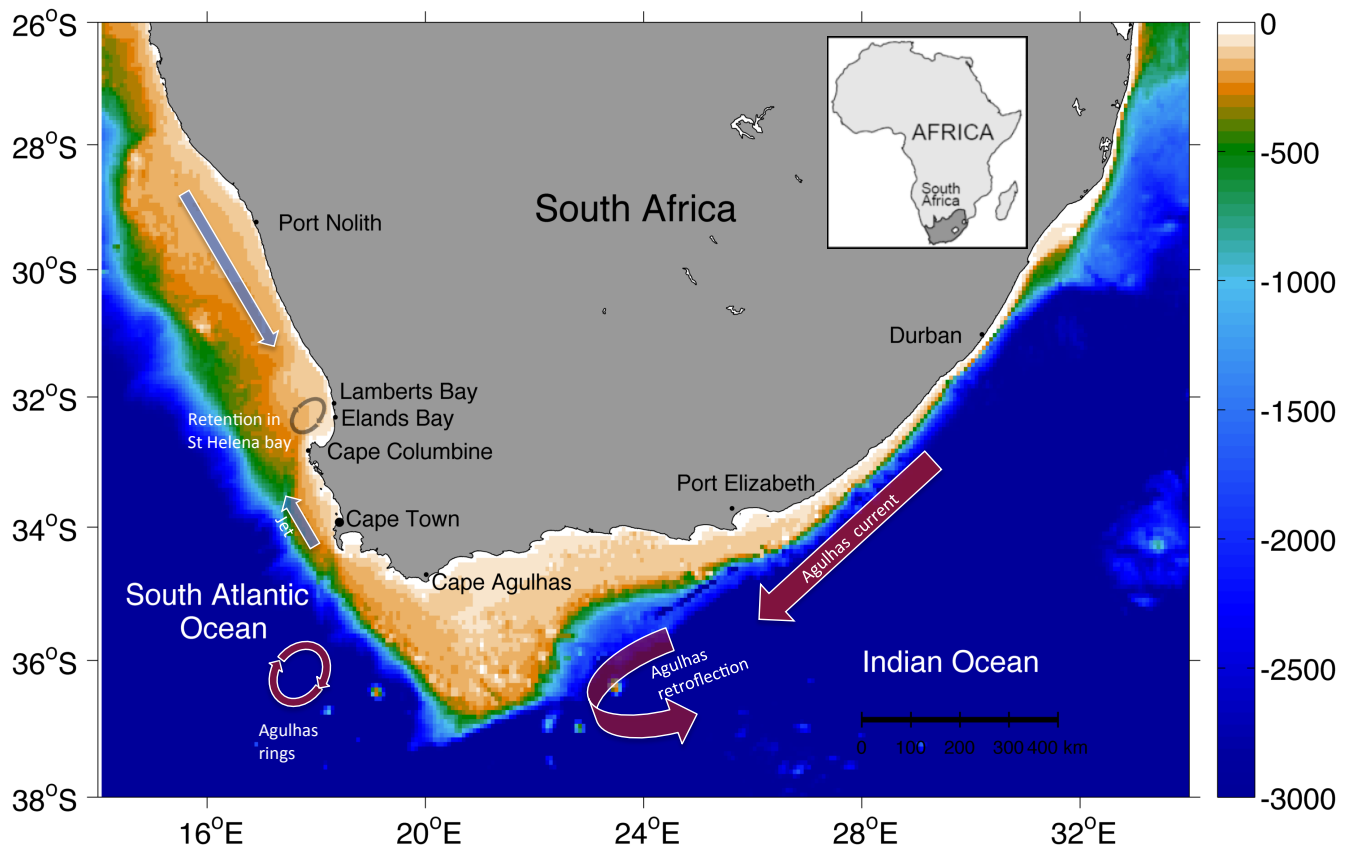


Figure 1.7: Map of South Africa with coastal bathymetry (m) and general oceanographic features. Adapted from Shannon (2006)

510 Physical drivers

511 In the southern Benguela, the area is dominated by the atmospheric South Atlantic subtropical
 512 anticyclone, causing high pressure cells that induce southerly wind stress. In this region, most
 513 hydrodynamic processes are governed by the prevailing winds (Pitcher et al., 1995) and thus
 514 strong coupling between wind patterns and bloom dynamics is observed (Fawcett et al., 2007).
 515 In the summer months, the prevailing winds are southerly, determined by the location of high
 516 pressure systems in the south Atlantic and the pressure field over the African continent, the
 517 gradient between the two and eastward moving cyclones (Nelson and Hutchings, 1983). Wind
 518 stress is intensified during summer months (September to March) when continental surface

519 heat flux creates low pressure systems and enhances zonal pressure gradients between both
520 pressure systems. During winter (April to September), westerly winds predominate as the at-
521 mospheric circulation features move northward, leaving low pressure systems to dominate. In
522 addition to this seasonality in southerly winds, synoptic scale wind patterns during the upwelling
523 season drive the upwelling/downwelling cycles, ranging from 3 -10 days (Nelson and Hutchings,
524 1983). These south-easterly winds drive Ekman transport of the surface layer away from the
525 shore, causing the replacement of surface water masses by cold, nutrient-rich upwelled waters
526 from depth, composed mostly of South Atlantic Central Water (SACW). Downwelling occurs
527 during periods of quiescent winds or light westerly winds, when surface waters are retained
528 within bays. These strong pulses of upwelling cycles, driven by synoptic weather and wind pat-
529 terns (Pitcher et al., 1998b), are the main drivers of short term variability of plankton dynamics,
530 as seen in Margalef's Mandala (Margalef et al., 1979).

531 **Harmful Algal Blooms**

532 Harmful algal blooms (HABs) are common to many coastal regions of the world (Hallegraeff,
533 1993) and frequent on the west coast of South Africa (Horstman, 1981; Pitcher and Cockcroft,
534 1998; Cockcroft et al., 1998; Pitcher and Probyn, 2011). The mechanisms driving the prolifer-
535 ation of harmful species are the result of a complex mix of physical, chemical and biological
536 interactions (Anderson et al., 2012). HABs have been reported to cause major impacts on pub-
537 lic health, fisheries and aquaculture, spurring a global consortium of research in the last decade
538 (GEOHAB), with the aim to understand driving mechanisms and ultimately establish monitoring
539 and predictive programs. HABs are characterised by the accumulation and often dominance of
540 particular toxic and non-toxic algal species, and can be separated by their impact (GEOHAB,
541 2001):

- 542 • the occurrence of rapid proliferation and/or high biomass of toxic algae that kill fish or
543 shellfish,
- 544 • highly toxic cells in low cell concentrations, but can render shellfish or other seafood poi-
545 sonous to humans and other marine mammals,

- 546 • the accumulation of non-toxic species at high biomass, causing ecosystem damage via
547 hypoxia, anoxia or altering food-web dynamics (Glibert et al., 2005). This includes blooms
548 that cause discolouration of water, more commonly known as red tides.

549 Globally, the frequency and magnitude of HABs, and consequently their ecosystem impacts,
550 have increased (Anderson et al., 2012). The mechanisms causing this are suggested to include
551 increases in coastal nutrient loading (Anderson et al., 2012 and references therein), changes in
552 species dispersal and physical transport (bottom-up), as well as altered food-webs as a result
553 of over-fishing, by impacting the community of grazers of harmful algal species (top-down).
554 However, the diversity in HAB species and the mechanisms causing their proliferation is vast
555 and studies are usually focused within a local context, thus no identified 'unifying principles'
556 can explain such phenomena at a global scale (Anderson et al., 2012).

557 *Diversity in blooms:*

558 Although harmful algal species are most commonly dinoflagellates, HABs cover a broad
559 range in phylogenetic grouping: diatoms, haptophytes and cyanobacteria, employing a wide
560 range from r to K strategies of growth (Haellegraff, 2010), toxicity patterns as well as filling sev-
561 eral niches (Smayda, 2000). Furthermore, mixotrophic tendencies have become an accepted
562 mode of nutrition for many harmful algal species observed (Glibert and Legrand, 2006). The di-
563 versity in species has traditionally been defined using nomenclatural classifications of species,
564 but other methods have been suggested to be more appropriate from an ecological perspective.
565 Smayda and Reynolds (2001) argued that quantifying HAB dynamics required focusing on the
566 life-form properties rather than individual species. It is also acknowledged that DNA sequencing
567 and molecular probing have brought novel insight into the molecular diversity of harmful algal
568 species (Sellner et al., 2003 and references therein).

569 In the southern Benguela, HAB events are strongly coupled to meteorological forcing such
570 as wind stress (direction and intensity) and insolation, where strong seasonality is observed with
571 HABs reported most often during late summer/autumn months between March-May (Pitcher
572 and Calder, 2000). HABs are particularly prevalent in St Helena Bay, equator-ward of Cape
573 Columbine, where the broadening of the coastal shelf is subject to intense stratification, fol-

574 lowing sustained periods of wind relaxation and onshore transport of dinoflagellate populations
575 (Pitcher and Boyd, 1996). The interplay between upwelling and downwelling favourable con-
576 ditions provide 'ecological windows' when HAB events are most likely (Kudela et al., 2005;
577 Bernard et al., 2006; Tilstone et al., 1994; Trainer et al., 2002; Ryan et al., 2009). The prolif-
578 eration of HAB species is often associated with the relatively high utilisation of reduced forms
579 of nitrogen (Collos et al., 2004; 2007, Kudela et al, 2010) and, in cases of eutrophication, urea
580 (Glibert et al., 2006; Solomon et al., 2010). Such functional traits (e.g. nutrient utilisation) are
581 well observed in dinoflagellates and small flagellates (Paerl, 1991; Berg et al., 1997; 2003)
582 and are characteristic of nutrient-deplete downwelling waters. High growth rates of *Pseudo-*
583 *nitzschia* spp., a diatom, on reduced forms of N have also been recorded (Howard et al., 2007;
584 Cochlan et al., 2008; Seeyave et al., 2009) which is in contrast to an often observed diatom
585 preference/affinity for nitrate (Collos, 1992; Lomas and Glibert, 2000). A review of published
586 kinetic experiments carried out for harmful species reveals, on average, highest affinities (α) for
587 reduced forms of nitrogen (Kudela et al., 2010 and references therein).

588 *Monitoring blooms:*

589 It is clear from the literature that HAB events are complex and remain unpredictable ow-
590 ing to the diversity of nutrient utilisation strategies, cell physiologies (Kudela et al., 2010),
591 competition/predator-prey interactions (Chakraborty and Feudel, 2014) and the range of habi-
592 tats in which they can occur (Smayda and Reynolds, 2001). Differentiating the phytoplank-
593 ton assemblages through satellite remote sensing techniques is of benefit to HAB monitoring
594 (Kudela et al., 2005; Bernard et al., 2009), where the scale of observation can be useful to
595 monitor temporal and spatial variability and trends in bloom dynamics. As mentioned above,
596 the initiation of HABs is a result of interactions between the biological, physical and chemical
597 conditions for the bloom, which vary for each HAB species. Consequently, a single solution to
598 monitoring and management may not exist and thus requires more locally designed methods of
599 observation. For example, in the Gulf of Mexico, *Karenia brevis* commonly forms red tides which
600 have caused significant economic losses to the region (Hoagland et al., 2009). Several stud-
601 ies have successfully applied algorithms to Sea-viewing Wide Field-of-view (SeaWiFS) data to

602 detect *K. brevis* blooms (Stumpf et al., 2003; Carvalho et al., 2010), providing information on
603 bloom size and magnitude.

604 In the southern Benguela, by far the most common HABs to occur are those of dinoflagellate
605 blooms, characteristically associated with exceptionally high biomass (as indexed by Chl-*a*),
606 where values often exceed 30 mg m⁻³ (Pitcher and Weeks, 2006; Fawcett et al., 2007; Pitcher
607 and Probyn, 2011). The standard global ocean color algorithms, e.g. for the Medium Resolution
608 Imaging Spectrometer (MERIS) data, are not well constrained at Chl-*a* concentrations greater
609 than 20 mg m⁻³ (Morel et al., 2007). This prompted the establishment of more specialised
610 algorithms for high biomass waters, such as the Equivalent Algal Population (EAP) algorithm
611 (Bernard, 2005; Evers-King et al., 2014), to accurately determine the high concentrations often
612 observed in the southern Benguela. An additional output from the algorithm is an effective
613 diameter (D_{eff}), which is a size metric that represents the bulk optical signal of a measured
614 assemblage using the mean volume to surface area ratio of the entire distribution (Bernard
615 et al., 2007). The detection of assemblage size characteristics is valuable in understanding
616 HAB dynamics, as bloom initiation is often associated with changes in the gross size of algal
617 assemblages (Bernard et al., 2014) and it is most often large dinoflagellate cells (>15 μm in
618 diameter) that most commonly form harmful blooms in the southern Benguela (Pitcher and
619 Calder, 2000).

620 The EAP algorithm was applied to an 11 year time series of MERIS data to assess temporal
621 and spatial trends in Chl-*a* and D_{eff} (Evers-King, 2014). The use of D_{eff} enabled confirma-
622 tion of two suggested patterns in the local variability in particle size distributions (Pitcher et al.,
623 1992a): 1) large cells are typically dominant inshore and small cells offshore, 2) a size pro-
624 gression from small to large cells over event scale upwelling/downwelling cycles. Furthermore,
625 the Chl-*a* and D_{eff} products derived from the EAP algorithm provide evidence that support the
626 conceptual model as described by Pitcher and Nelson (2006) and illustrated in Fig 1.8.

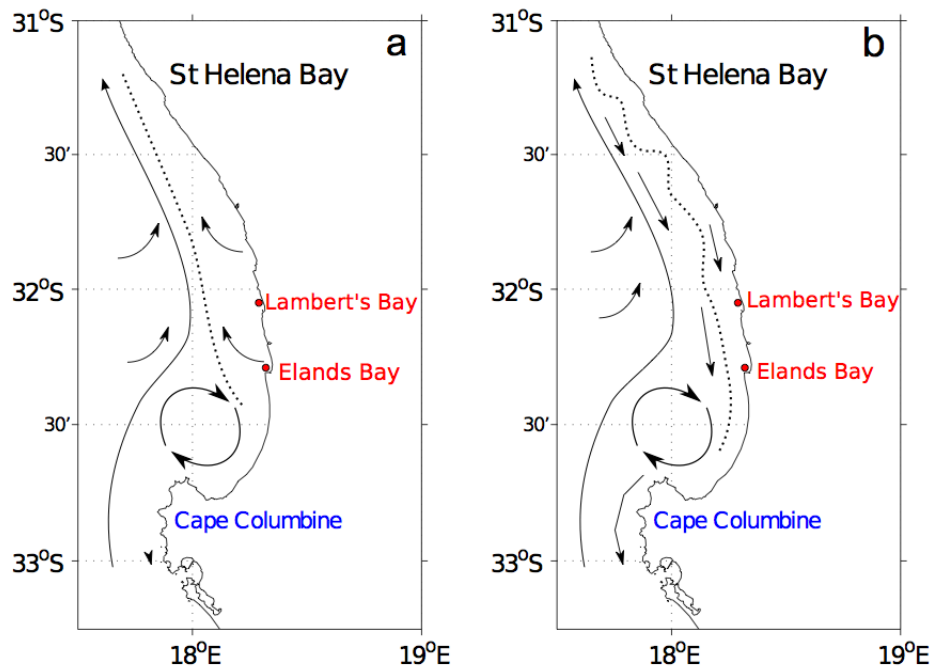


Figure 1.8: Schematic illustrating the major physical circulation features in St Helena Bay during a) upwelling and b) downwelling/relaxation scenarios that drive the spatial distribution of dinoflagellate populations. Dashed line indicates the spatial extent from the shore of dinoflagellates. Taken from Evers-King (2014) with permission from the author.

627 The approach used to determine D_{eff} from the EAP algorithm differs fundamentally from
 628 other algorithms that derive either dominant size class (Brewin et al., 2010; Uitz et al., 2010) or
 629 particle size distributions (Kostadinov et al., 2009), and it has yet to be quantitatively compared
 630 to each of the other approaches (Evers-King et al., 2014). The advantage of the EAP algorithm
 631 over others in such a local context is its capacity to appropriately deal with exceptionally high
 632 biomass (Bernard et al., 2014). The algorithm product, D_{eff} , has proven to be useful in the
 633 tracking of high biomass blooms containing cells within the micro-plankton size range (10 - 50
 634 μm) and has provided new insight into the spatial and temporal variability of HABs within the St
 635 Helena Bay area (Fig. 1.9).

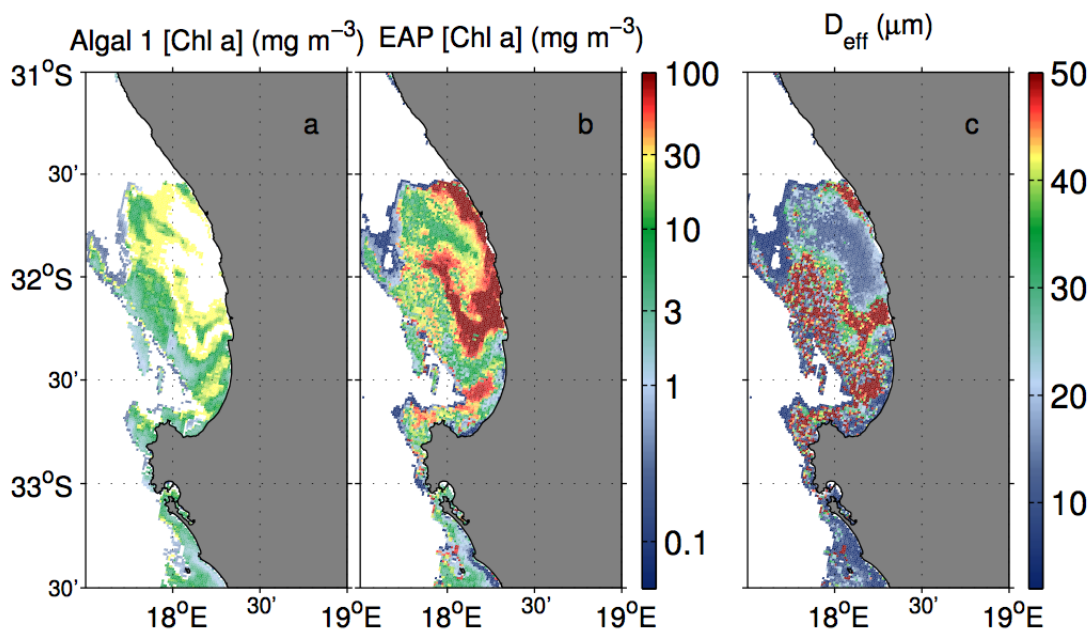


Figure 1.9: Products derived from MERIS level 2 imagery in St Helena Bay on the 5 April 2005. Comparisons between Chl-*a* products using a) Algal 1 (standard algorithm for case 1 waters) and b) Chl-*a* product from EAP algorithm (Bernard et al., 2009). c) shows the associated D_{eff} product from the EAP algorithm. Images kindly provided by Evers-King.

636 The use of aggregate properties to describe an assemblage as a single entity is not new.
 637 The effective diameter described above was adapted from atmospheric sciences, where single
 638 size proxies are used as equivalent descriptors of the aggregated bulk optical properties of the
 639 particle size distributions (Bernard et al., 2007). Similarly, in the plankton modeling community
 640 several models treat phytoplankton assemblages as a single entity through aggregate proper-
 641 ties such as total biomass, mean trait and trait variance (Wirtz and Eckhardt, 1996; Bruggeman
 642 and Kooijman, 2007; Merico et al., 2009; Wirtz, 2013; Acevedo-Trejos et al., 2016). Such ap-
 643 proaches are adopted with the aim to reduce the complexity in characterising natural commu-
 644 nities and thus, the computational costs of modeling them.

645 Aims and Objectives

646 Phytoplankton are a key component in the functioning of marine systems and play a central
 647 role in the cycling of important elements. Representing diversity in biogeochemical models
 648 has become an increasingly popular area of research. Phytoplankton cell size is considered

649 a 'master' trait that can represent the functional diversity in phytoplankton, owing to empirical
650 relationships observed between metabolism, cell size and the trade offs associated with growth.
651 In this thesis, emphasis is placed on gaining further insight into the ecological significance of
652 a bulk metric, effective diameter (D_{eff}), to represent the size-based diversity in phytoplankton
653 assemblages. As a product derived from ocean-color data for high biomass blooms that are
654 typical in the southern Benguela, D_{eff} has been used to assess synoptic-scale variability in
655 phytoplankton assemblages, but has yet to be tested in an ecological/biogeochemical context.

656 Nitrogen, in its many forms, is identified as a key driver in phytoplankton community struc-
657 ture (and often HABs) in the southern Benguela, and will thus be used as a testing currency.
658 The relationships, and variability therein, between phytoplankton cell size and the associated
659 nitrogen dynamics are expected to provide a good platform for such an analysis.

660 The southern Benguela upwelling system is an ideal 'laboratory' to explore the usefulness
661 of D_{eff} , as the system offers highly fluctuating dynamics of nitrogen and periodic shifts in the
662 relative contributions of oxidised and regenerated forms to the total nitrogen inventory. Fur-
663 thermore, owing to such high nutrient supply, the large fractions of the size spectrum of phyto-
664 plankton are periodically present, often in bi-modality, and thus supply a broad spectrum of cell
665 size distributions. As opposed to employing cultured phytoplankton communities, using natural
666 assemblages, measured *in situ*, provides the necessary means to test how well D_{eff} can de-
667 scribe nitrogen metabolism in relation to other, concomitant influences. The specific research
668 questions that refer to each data chapter are as follows:

669 1) The southern Benguela upwelling system is periodically subject to HABs and monitoring
670 their dynamics has become an evermore pressing priority for local research. Any discussion
671 on phytoplankton dynamics in the southern Benguela would be incomplete without some focus
672 on HABs. The development of the effective diameter (D_{eff}) approach was driven by the need
673 to provide size information for these high biomass blooms. Can D_{eff} capture the principal
674 biogeochemical properties of observed phytoplankton assemblages in high biomass?

675 2) Diatoms are the most abundant and diverse group of phytoplankton in the marine envi-
676 ronment and display a wide range in strategies of nitrogen uptake. Sampling from a coastal

677 bay system provides a data set of diatom-predominant assemblages to explore the strategies
678 of nitrogen utilisation under varying environmental conditions. What are the strongest factors
679 that influence nitrogen uptake within diatoms? Given the wide range in cell sizes of diatoms,
680 can D_{eff} represent nitrogen utilisation within diatoms as a group?

681 3) Establishing adequate means of representing phytoplankton diversity and its role in bio-
682 geochemistry is an important research area in phytoplankton models. Phytoplankton cell size
683 distributions are hypothesised to be an accurate means to quantify nitrogen uptake by diverse,
684 natural assemblages of phytoplankton. Can a size-based approach to phytoplankton diversity
685 and nitrogen dynamics account for the variability observed in measured *in situ* nitrogen uptake
686 by natural populations?

687 This thesis covers the nitrogen dynamics observed in diverse, natural phytoplankton as-
688 semblages and uses these case studies to inform understanding of the relationships between
689 nitrogen uptake and a size metric, D_{eff} . The nitrogen utilisation by diverse groups of phyto-
690 plankton is detailed in relation to environmental variables for three *in situ* case studies. These
691 descriptions in themselves provide valuable information on the utilisation of nitrogen during high
692 biomass, harmful algal blooms and in diatom dominated assemblages.

693 Chapter two explores two case studies of particular interest at the Lamberts Bay study site,
694 where exceptionally high biomass is observed with the proliferation of two common harmful al-
695 gal species: *Myrionecta rubra* and *Prorocentrum triestinum*. The dynamics of community struc-
696 ture and environmental variability are linked to the utilisation of the different nitrogen sources
697 (NO_3^- , NH_4^+ and urea). Some inferences are made on the physiology of the two species of in-
698 terest and are compared along the upwelling/downwelling axes. The relationships between the
699 single-value size proxy, D_{eff} , and the uptake of nitrogen are quantified.

700 Chapter three takes advantage of a diatom-dominated data set to explore the nitrogen dy-
701 namics during bimonthly sampling over the period of a year in a coastal bay system, Saldanha
702 Bay. Limitations on nitrogen uptake rates are linked to environmental variables as well as qual-
703 itatively to community structure. The results of uptake kinetic experiments throughout the sam-
704 pling period are compared, to assess the variations in Michaelis-Menten uptake parameters

705 within diatoms under varying environmental conditions. Finally, the relationships between D_{eff}
706 and nitrogen uptake rates are assessed.

707 Chapter four explores several means to predicting size-integrated nitrogen uptake rates via
708 Michaelis-Menten uptake kinetic parameters. Size distributions from the three case studies are
709 converted to an integrated biomass value and compared to *in situ* particulate nitrogen to validate
710 the use of Coulter Counter size distributions. Comparisons are made between measured and
711 estimated uptake rates. Estimated uptake rates are calculated using kinetic parameters that are
712 scaled to size, but the use of constant parameters is also included in the analysis to compare
713 allometric and non-allometric estimations.

714 Chapter five summarises the major conclusions of this thesis and offers suggestions for
715 further work which would enhance our understanding of the role that diversity plays in a broader
716 ecological context. Suggestions are made for further research into the use of phytoplankton
717 size distributions as a tool to improve our mechanistic understanding of functional diversity in
718 nitrogen dynamics.

719 Chapter 2

720 Can effective diameter (D_{eff}) capture the 721 nitrogen utilisation by high biomass 722 blooms at upwelling/downwelling 723 timescales?

724 Abstract

725 High biomass, and often harmful, algal blooms are a prevalent feature in the southern Benguela.
726 Large scale monitoring of such blooms is facilitated by the development of the ocean color
727 Equivalent Algal Population (EAP) algorithm, which provides an algal size proxy, effective diam-
728 eter (D_{eff}). This product has previously been used to assess synoptic scale variability in high
729 biomass, large-celled blooms but has yet to be assessed in terms of biogeochemical relevance.
730 This study describes the nitrogen dynamics of two separate high biomass blooms that occurred
731 late austral summer of 2004 and 2005 in Lamberts Bay, South Africa. The nitrogen dynamics of
732 the blooms are related to D_{eff} with the aim of establishing the degree to which D_{eff} represents
733 the nitrogen physiology of the communities, within the constraint of allometry. In 2004, *Myri-*
734 *onecta rubra*, a mixotrophic ciliate, was present in both upwelling and downwelling conditions

735 and observed in close association with a diatom genus, *Skeletonema* spp. *Myrionecta rubra*
736 proliferated to high biomass ($104 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$), with high rates of primary productivity (303 mgC
737 $\text{m}^{-3} \text{ h}^{-1}$) and high NO_3^- uptake rates ($0.30 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$). In 2005, *Prorocentrum triestinum*,
738 a common HAB species, was also observed in high biomass ($147 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) and primary
739 productivity peaked at $340 \text{ mgC m}^{-3}\text{h}^{-1}$. Diatoms were the most efficient utilisers of NO_3^- and
740 total nitrogen in both case studies, irrespective of cell size. Urea appeared to be an important
741 source of nitrogen during both harmful algal blooms. The uptake rates of regenerated forms
742 of nitrogen were correlated with D_{eff} (NH_4^+ : $r=-0.54$, $p<0.05$; urea: $r=-0.59$, $p<0.05$), indicat-
743 ing that the bulk dynamics of regenerated forms of nitrogen can be adequately represented by
744 D_{eff} . By comparison, the observed positive relationship between D_{eff} and the uptake of NO_3^-
745 was not significant ($r=0.27$, $p>0.05$). The uptake of regenerated nitrogen is thus well captured
746 by D_{eff} but not the uptake of NO_3^- .

747 Introduction

748 Nitrogen is a major limiting nutrient in the marine environment (Dugdale, 1967), with a complex
749 cycle and strong interactions with the uptake of carbon and other elements (Gruber, 2008).
750 Coastal upwelling systems cover merely $\sim 2\%$ of the global ocean, but their contribution to
751 global primary production is disproportionately significant (Ryther, 1969), and they are thus
752 important regions to consider in global nitrogen dynamics.

753 Different forms of nitrogen, in its oxidised (NO_3^-) or reduced forms (NH_4^+ , urea), are utilised by
754 different components of phytoplankton communities (Probyn, 1985; Stolte and Riegman, 1995;
755 Litchman et al., 2007). Small phytoplankton cells ($<2 \mu\text{m}$) are considered principal utilisers of
756 reduced forms of nitrogen and large cells ($>2 \mu\text{m}$) are frequently observed to utilise nitrate when
757 available in high concentrations (Probyn, 1985; Chisholm, 1992; Thingstad, 1998; Agawin et al.,
758 2000; Barnes et al., 2011; Acevedo-Trejos et al., 2013). However, several studies (Dauchez
759 et al., 1996; Bury et al., 2001) suggested the size/nutrient source relationship is not clear cut and
760 is strongly influenced by taxonomic variability (Chisholm, 1992). The relationship is even more

761 confounded in extreme conditions, i.e. during harmful algal blooms (HABs), when adaptive
762 strategies can be adopted under nutrient-limited or highly competitive conditions. The southern
763 Benguela is characterised by frequent high biomass blooms that can have adverse effects on
764 the ecosystem, thus any discussion of the phytoplankton and nitrogen dynamics in the region
765 would be incomplete without their inclusion.

766 **Harmful algal blooms and the role of nitrogen**

767 The term HAB covers a broad spectrum of events (Zingone and Enevoldsen, 2000), and is de-
768 fined by GEOHAB (2001) as high biomass blooms, toxic or not, which have direct or indirect
769 negative consequences for marine ecosystems and/or human health. HABs can be distin-
770 guished by two main forms of causing harm: either by producing toxins that enter the marine
771 food chain, or via their accumulation in high biomass, causing hypoxia, anoxia or altering food-
772 web dynamics. The second situation, the accumulation of high biomass, is more commonly
773 known as a red tide (Glibert et al., 2005) and is a prevalent feature in the southern Benguela.

774 Margalef's Mandala (Margalef, 1978) was a seminal conceptual model of the balance be-
775 tween turbulence and nutrient availability in determining the dominance of diatoms or dinoflag-
776 ellates in phytoplankton assemblages. The Mandala was extended to explain red tides, which
777 occur during low turbulence and high nutrient availability (Margalef et al., 1979). However, in
778 upwelling systems, which are often affected by HABs (e.g. Kudela et al., 2005, 2010), this
779 model is not always applicable (Smayda, 2000). In the southern Benguela for example, red
780 tides are often observed towards the end of the upwelling season in stratified, nutrient-deplete
781 conditions (Seeyave et al., 2009). Several studies have further developed Margalef's Mandala
782 as understanding improved of phytoplankton physiology and ecology (Smayda and Reynolds,
783 2001; Cullen et al., 2007; Wyatt, 2014). Most recently, Glibert (2016) added several axes to the
784 Mandala, placing particular emphasis on nutritional physiology, differentiating between nutrient
785 preferences for $\text{NO}_3^-/\text{NH}_4^+$ by large/small cells and the outcome of new and regenerated produc-
786 tion respectively. Distinction was also made between two groups of HAB dinoflagellates: high
787 biomass bloom-forming *Prorocentrum* spp, and low biomass, toxic species such as *Alexandrium*

788 spp. (Glibert, 2016). The review by Glibert (2016) exemplifies advances in our understanding
789 of phytoplankton physiology and ecology, and the benefit of using trait-based approaches to
790 conceptualise the complexity of plankton dynamics.

791 Numerous studies of red tides in the southern Benguela focus on the physical dynamics as-
792 sociated with HAB development. Well established patterns are evident in the interplay between
793 upwelling and downwelling-favourable winds (Pitcher et al., 1998b; Fawcett et al., 2007), water
794 column stability and increased thermal stratification (Pitcher et al., 1998b), and alongshore ad-
795 vection and in-shore accumulation of blooms (Pitcher and Boyd, 1996). The interplay between
796 upwelling and downwelling favourable conditions provides an ecological window when HAB
797 events are most likely (Pitcher et al., 1998b; Bernard et al., 2006; Kudela et al., 2010), when
798 prolonged relaxation and onshore advection occur and rates of phytoplankton growth exceed
799 those of dispersion and mortality (Tilstone et al., 1994; Smayda, 2000; Trainer et al., 2002).
800 This has also been observed in other upwelling areas (Tilstone et al., 1994; Trainer et al., 2002;
801 Ryan et al., 2009).

802 In terms of nutrient dynamics, the proliferation of HAB species is often associated with re-
803 duced forms of nitrogen (Kudela et al., 2010), often showing preferences for ammonium (Collos
804 et al., 2004; 2007) and, in cases of eutrophication, urea (Glibert et al., 2006; Solomon et al.,
805 2010). Such utilisation traits are well observed in dinoflagellates and small flagellates (Paerl,
806 1991; Berg et al., 1997; Berg et al., 2003) and are characteristic of nutrient conditions dur-
807 ing relaxation of upwelling. However, nutrient affinities of species that cause harmful blooms
808 (either in high biomass or in toxic latency) are varied and reflect the physiological diversity
809 of harmful algal species. Seeyave et al. (2009) found high affinities for both NO_3^- and NH_4^+
810 during a *Pseudo-nitzschia* sp. bloom, and highest affinities for NH_4^+ in separate blooms of
811 harmful dinoflagellates *Alexandrium catenella* and *Dinophysis acuminata*. The nutrient utili-
812 sation strategies of the harmful algal species observed implies that they do not always follow
813 the hypothesised diatom preference for NO_3^- (Malone, 1980a) and dinoflagellate preference for
814 regenerated forms of nitrogen (Glibert and McCarthy, 1984). Similarly, blooms of mixotrophic
815 species can be responsible for ecologically catastrophic events (Horstman, 1981; Burkholder

816 et al., 2008), but data and our understanding of their nutrient utilisation traits remain poor (Mitra
817 and Flynn, 2010). In a review by Kudela et al. (2010), it is evident that HABs in upwelling areas
818 occupy numerous ecological niches provided by 'ecological windows' and the shifts between
819 upwelling/downwelling dynamics. As such, HABs are evidenced to employ a wide range of nu-
820 trient utilisation strategies, exhibiting moderate to high affinities for NO_3^- as well as regenerated
821 nitrogen (NH_4^+ , urea).

822 **The monitoring of HABs via remote sensing**

823 Owing to diversity in the type and impact of harmful blooms, the causes of blooms and their
824 impacts are ecosystem specific (Zingone and Enevoldsen, 2000), and thus methods of mon-
825 itoring are usually contextualised to a specific ecosystem. Remote-sensing can provide data
826 on harmful algal blooms by revealing several characteristic features surrounding bloom devel-
827 opment and maintenance, such as large scale environmental changes, elevation of biomass to
828 exceptionally high concentrations and, in some instances, information on assemblage structure
829 such as organism size (Bernard et al., 2009; Kostadinov et al., 2010; Evers-King et al., 2014) or
830 functional group probability (Stumpf et al., 2003). Information on changes in sea surface tem-
831 peratures (SST) and retention or advection of water masses could indicate ecological windows
832 that are known to be optimal conditions for the potential proliferation of certain blooms (Pitcher
833 et al., 1998b; Sordo et al., 2001). Miller et al. (2006) were able to derive HAB likelihood indices
834 based on spectral responses of different species; *Karenia mikimotoi*, *Chattonella verruculosa*
835 and cyanobacteria. Their multivariate classification uses input data to 'train' the algorithm in
836 combining distinct spectral responses and optimal environmental conditions.

837 In blooms that are dominated by a single species, proxies such as increases in Chl-*a* have
838 been shown, in some cases, to be sufficient to detect harmful algal blooms. In the Gulf of
839 Mexico, Sea-viewing Wide Field of View Sensor (SeaWiFS) data were used to detect *Kare-*
840 *nia brevis* blooms (e.g. Stumpf et al., 2003) by detecting localised increases in Chl-*a* above
841 running mean or median background levels. In instances where species do not dominate the
842 biomass, detecting such HABs is only possible by monitoring conditions associated with their

843 proliferation, i.e. 'ecological associations' (Miller et al., 2006). Such is the case for instances
844 of *Pseudo-nitzschia* spp., which occurs regularly in upwelling regions but comprises merely
845 10% of total chlorophyll (Stumpf and Tomlinson, 2005), Alternatively, the detection of certain
846 pigments particular to harmful algal species can also be adopted. Cyanobacteria blooms were
847 detected in the Baltic Sea using MERIS bands 6 and 8, by detecting the absorption features of
848 phycocyanin, a pigment present primarily in cyanobacteria (Kutser et al., 2006).

849 In the southern Benguela, harmful algal blooms are often characterised by exceptionally high
850 biomass, with Chl-*a* concentrations exceeding 30 mg m⁻³ (Pitcher and Weeks, 2006; Fawcett
851 et al., 2007; Pitcher and Probyn, 2011). These high biomass waters, with ocean color signals
852 dominated by the contribution of phytoplankton, provide good opportunity for the application of
853 algorithms offering some assemblage descriptors. For example, the Equivalent Algal Population
854 (EAP) algorithm (Bernard et al., 2009) was developed for the region, where a single metric (ef-
855 fective diameter) can be derived that represents the bulk optical signal of an entire assemblage,
856 considering the assemblage as a single entity.

857 **Effective diameter as a size proxy**

858 Several simple descriptors of algal size or formulations for size distributions are employed to
859 represent phytoplankton or particle size distributions. The most commonly used function is a
860 power law function, the Junge distribution (Junge, 1963). Such a function is adequate for oligo-
861 trophic environments, which are characteristically dominated by small cell sizes (Chisholm,
862 1992) and follow the smooth, negative exponential of Junge-type representations. In eutrophic
863 systems however, an alternative function is required that can account for complex shapes as
864 the dominance of one or more size classes leads to bimodal or polydispersed distributions that
865 deviate markedly from Junge distributions. Single parameters that adequately describe the
866 combined or average optical properties of complex particle size distributions have been estab-
867 lished and are used in the field of atmospheric physics (Hu and Stamnes, 1993; Alexandrov and
868 Lacis, 2000). Similarly, several numerical models quantify phytoplankton assemblages by a sin-
869 gle parameter, e.g. total biomass, mean trait or trait variance, and consider the assemblage as

870 a single entity (Wirtz and Eckhardt, 1996; Bruggeman and Kooijman, 2007; Merico et al., 2009;
871 Acevedo-Trejos et al., 2015, 2016; Wirtz, 2013).

872 The EAP algorithm was locally contextualised to account for the high biomass that is preva-
873 lent in the southern Benguela, and offers two products to describe the assemblages from re-
874 mote sensing. A singular descriptive variable output of the EAP algorithm, known as the effec-
875 tive diameter (D_{eff}), was tested in the southern Benguela, and has been shown to accurately
876 represent the optical properties of typical particle size distributions (Bernard et al., 2007, 2009;
877 Robertson Lain et al., 2014; Evers-King et al., 2014). Bernard et al. (2009) and Evers-King
878 et al. (2014) assessed the impact that algal and non-algal particle size distributions had on
879 absorption and scattering signals in the southern Benguela, where bimodal or polydispersed
880 distributions are common. Owing to complexity in phytoplankton size distributions, defining the
881 parameter to represent such diverse distributions is not without difficulties. When conducting
882 size estimates of D_{eff} , greatest errors occurred when Chl-*a* was estimated incorrectly and/or at
883 concentrations $< 10 \text{ mg m}^{-3}$. However, overall, the results revealed that D_{eff} was able to give
884 an indication of the broad size structure of the community, and would be useful in discriminat-
885 ing between large or small cell size dominance in certain bloom scenarios. Estimates of D_{eff}
886 represent a good analogue to existing allometric trait-based approaches in that they offer either
887 optical or physiological properties based on a simple size continuum. Great potential exists to
888 use D_{eff} to study the synoptic variability and spatial scales offered by satellite remote sensing
889 of phytoplankton blooms, harmful or not. To date no assessments have been made as to its
890 biogeochemical relevance.

891 **Application of D_{eff} to Harmful Algal Blooms**

892 HABs are often associated with changes in the dominant size of algal assemblages (Bernard
893 et al., 2006) and it is most often large dinoflagellate cells ($>15 \mu\text{m}$ in diameter) that commonly
894 form harmful blooms in the southern Benguela (Pitcher and Calder, 2000). D_{eff} was applied
895 to an 11 year time series to assess synoptic variability and temporal trends in phytoplankton
896 assemblages (Evers-King, 2014). Several key patterns in cell size distributions were confirmed

897 when using the D_{eff} output. General patterns in the dominance of large cells inshore and at
898 frontal features, and dominance of small cells offshore have been observed (Crichton et al.,
899 2013) and satellite constructions of effective diameter have confirmed this (Evers-King, 2014).
900 Further, the MERIS time series and D_{eff} provided evidence for the coastal circulation patterns
901 predicted by Pitcher and Nelson (2006), where an inshore poleward current and the accumula-
902 tion of large cells inshore can be seen during downwelling conditions.

903 In this chapter, two case studies will be used to explore the usefulness of D_{eff} from a biogeo-
904 chemical point of view. The first case study involves a bloom of *Myrionecta rubra* (previously
905 known as *Mesodinium rubrum*), which is a large planktonic ciliate with a cell diameter up to
906 100 μm (including cilia), showing both heterotrophic and autotrophic behaviour (Hansen and
907 Fenchel, 2006; Herfort et al., 2011). *Myrionecta rubra* causes non-toxic red tides globally (Lind-
908 holm, 1985; Crawford, 1989; Herfort et al., 2011 and references therein) and is often seen in
909 very high biomass with exceptionally high productivity. The second case study involves a bloom
910 of *Prorocentrum triestinum*, which is a common HAB dinoflagellate found in many parts of the
911 globe (Labib, 1996; Ault, 2000; Douding and Goebel, 2001; Fawcett et al., 2007), with aver-
912 age cell length 15-22 μm and diameter 7-12 μm (Douding and Goebel, 2001). *Prorocentrum*
913 *triestinum* has the highest measured division rates of its genus (Kim, 1986). The little that is
914 known of the physiology of *P. triestinum* is derived from culture experiments and, to date, no
915 description of its *in situ* nutrient utilisation has been published.

916 This chapter aims to describe the nitrogen utilisation in the two separate case studies in
917 Lamberts Bay, South Africa, providing information on the biogeochemical conditions and ni-
918 trogen physiology during these harmful algal blooms. The environmental conditions will be
919 described in relation to species composition and community size structure. The second aim
920 is to estimate the effective diameter of the bloom organisms and assess how well the nitrogen
921 dynamics are related to this size descriptive metric in the two HABs. If D_{eff} can be used to
922 represent the bulk biogeochemical properties of an assemblage, it could potentially be used to
923 quantify key biogeochemical features of the region at scales provided by the wealth that is the
924 ocean color archive.

925 **Methods**

926 **Sampling**

927 Samples and measurements were taken in austral summer from a fixed station position (32°
928 05.020'S, 18° 16.010'E), 3.5 km offshore from Lamberts Bay, on the west coast of South Africa
929 (Fig. 2.1). When bloom waters containing assemblages of interest had been advected away
930 from the station, measurements and samples were taken at selected patches, within close prox-
931 imity to the fixed station. Two study periods were selected, one of 15 days (25 February - 11
932 March 2004) and the other of 16 days (15 March - 6 April 2005). Only days with a complete
933 set of variables (microscopy, Coulter Counter, temperature, uptake rates and nutrient concen-
934 trations) were used in the analysis. Daily vertical temperature and fluorescence profiles were
935 obtained with a Sea-Bird Electronics Seacat CTD profiler. Samples for phytoplankton counts
936 were collected in 200 mL bottles from the surface and 5 m depth and fixed in a final concentra-
937 tion of 2.5% buffered formalin for enumeration. For incubations and other measurements, water
938 from the surface was collected in a 20 L black bucket, and a 5 L Niskin bottle was used to collect
939 water at 5 m, which was decanted into a second black bucket. Incubations to measure nitrogen
940 uptake for both surface and subsurface waters were simulated as *in situ* on land, where temper-
941 atures were controlled by a separate chiller unit for surface and subsurface samples, and light
942 was simulated at 50%. Subsurface samples were predominantly taken from 5 m, but on two
943 occasions samples were drawn respectively from 3.5 m and 10 m. Water was transported back
944 ashore within 1 hour of collection for incubations, Coulter Counter analyses, nutrient analyses
945 and Chl-*a* analyses.

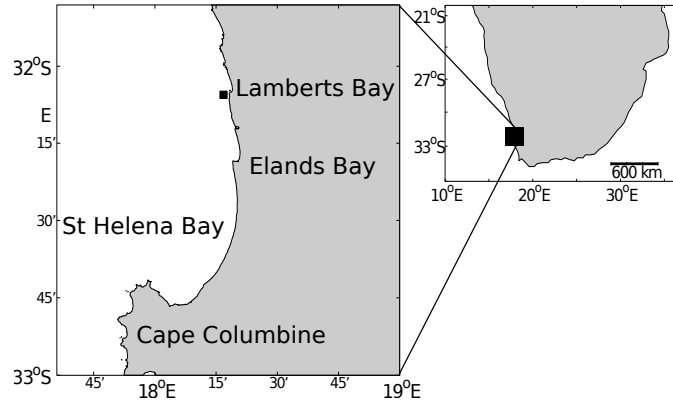


Figure 2.1: Sampling location (■) 3.5 km offshore from Lambert’s Bay on the southern Namaqua Shelf.

946 **Coulter Counter Analysis**

947 The size spectra of samples were measured using a Beckman Multisizer 2 Coulter Counter.
 948 An aperture size of 140 μm was used, with a capacity to measure particles from 2-86 μm .
 949 Filtered seawater (using 0.2 μm Nucleopore) was used as a diluent in cases of high biomass
 950 where the aperture became blocked. Calibration of the aperture was carried out at the start of
 951 every sampling period using calibration beads with a modal size of 20 μm , as recommended
 952 by Beckman Coulter Counter. A discrete sample volume of 40 mL was used to count particles
 953 per size class and was blank corrected with 0.2 μm filtered seawater. Discrete particle size
 954 distributions (PSDs) represent the number of particles (N) per unit volume (cells L^{-1}) within
 955 each of the size classes, which were log-spaced equivalent spherical diameter (ESD) size bins.
 956 Total assemblage volume, V (μm^3), per size bin was calculated as:

$$V = N \frac{4}{3} \pi r^3 \quad (2.1)$$

957 where cell radius (μm) is half the ESD and all cells are assumed spherical. Effective di-
 958 ameters (D_{eff}), the ratio of the third to second moment (ESD^3/ESD^2) or essentially the vol-
 959 ume/surface area ratio of the distribution, were calculated to characterise the entire size distri-

960 bution of the assemblage by a single value (Bernard et al., 2007, 2009):

$$D_{eff} = \frac{\int_1^{bins} \frac{\pi}{6} ESD^3}{\int_1^{bins} \frac{\pi}{4} ESD^2} \quad (2.2)$$

961 **Wind data**

962 Hourly averages of wind speed and direction were obtained from Lamberts Bay Nortier station
963 of the South African Weather Service, located 8.4 km north-east of the sampling station. Wind
964 data were decomposed into north (u) and east (v) components and rotated 21.5° eastward. A
965 lanczos high pass filter was applied and alongshore wind speeds were calculated, with positive
966 values indicating equator-ward winds. Neutral wind stress (τ) was calculated according to Smith
967 (1988), applying a running mean to a period of 12 hours and thus smoothing the data to reduce
968 small scale variability:

$$\tau = \rho_{air} C_D U^2 \quad (2.3)$$

969 where ρ_{air} is the density of air, C_D is a dimensionless drag coefficient and U is the wind
970 speed (m s^{-1}) at 10 m. Calculations were computed from scripts in the Woods Hole Air-Sea
971 toolbox available at http://woodshole.er.usgs.gov/operations/sea-mat/air_sea-html/.

972 **Community structure**

973 Species were counted using inverted microscopy following the Utermöhl method (Utermöhl,
974 1958). Dominance within assemblages was considered by cell numbers (cells L^{-1}), where the
975 dominant taxon (as used in the GLM analysis) is considered >40%. In the case of *Myrionecta*
976 *rubra*, dominance was considered from 30% given its large cell size.

977 **Primary production**

978 Primary production was measured using the ^{14}C method (Parsons et al., 1984). At each
979 depth sampled, three light samples and one dark sample were inoculated with 0.2 $\mu\text{mol } 2\text{uCi}$

980 $\text{NaH}^{14}\text{CO}_3$ and incubated *in situ* at their respective depths for 4 hours over midday. At the end
981 of the incubation period, water samples were filtered onto Whatman GF/F filters, air-dried for
982 1.5 h and placed in scintillation vials to which 0.5 mL HCl was added to remove any remaining
983 inorganic ^{14}C . Vials were shaken vigorously after the addition of scintillation fluor (Instagel) and
984 stored in the dark. The activity of filters was assayed by liquid scintillation counting using a
985 Beckman LS1800.

986 **Nutrients**

987 Manual determinations of all nutrients were carried out within 2 hours of collection and after
988 filtration through a 47 mm Whatman GF/F filter. Nitrate was analysed according to the cadmium
989 reduction method of Nydahl (1976), where flow rate is controlled by a peristaltic pump. Nitrite
990 (NO_2^-), silicate (Si), phosphate (PO_4^{3-}), ammonium (NH_4^+) and urea were analysed in triplicate
991 following Grasshoff (1983), scaled down to 5 mL samples. Urea was analysed using sulfuric
992 acid reagent and a manganous chloride mixed reagent and placed in the oven for 3h at 75° C,
993 following Koroleff (1983).

994 **Chlorophyll-a (Chl-a)**

995 For the determination of Chl-a, 100 mL samples were filtered onto 25 mm Whatman GF/F filters.
996 Filters were placed in 10 mL centrifuge tubes with 9 mL of 90% acetone and stored in a freezer
997 for pigment extraction. After 24 hours, samples were centrifuged at 200 rpm for 10 minutes
998 prior to measuring fluorescence of the supernatant using a Turner fluorometer. The fluorometer
999 was regularly calibrated with available commercial Chl-a (Sigma Anacystis).

1000 **Uptake Incubations**

1001 Water from each depth was decanted into two 1 L Nalgene polycarbonate bottles and one 2
1002 L Nalgene bottle. The 2 L bottle was inoculated with $^{15}\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$, well mixed and split into two
1003 1 L portions. Of this, 1 L was decanted into a polycarbonate bottle for ammonium uptake
1004 measurements (Fig. 2.2). The other 1 L bottles were inoculated with a stock solution of either

1005 $^{15}\text{NO}_3^-$ or Urea ($\text{CO}(^{15}\text{NH}_2)_2$), with adjustments of the ^{15}N spike volume to equate to $\sim 10\%$ of
1006 the ambient nutrient concentrations. The volume of added stock solutions varied according to
1007 concentrations measured the previous days or, in the case of NO_3^- , on temperature. The three
1008 1 L polycarbonate bottles (NO_3^- , NH_4^+ and Urea) were incubated for a period of 2-4 hours under
1009 natural light. The 1 L bottle spiked with $^{15}\text{NH}_4^+$ was filtered on a 47 mm ashed Whatman GF/F
1010 filter. A 900 mL sub-sample of the filtrate was frozen for later determination of the $^{15}\text{N}:^{14}\text{N}$ ratio
1011 for initial aqueous enrichment (R_0) of NH_4^+ by mass spectrometry. The remaining 1 L was used
1012 to determine the initial nutrient concentrations.

1013 Incubations were terminated by filtration on 47 mm ashed GF/F filters, washed with artificial
1014 sea water and Milli-Q and then dried at 75°C overnight. Sub-samples were punched out of each
1015 filter and wrapped in tin capsules for later determination of particulate $^{15}\text{N}:^{14}\text{N}$ by a Finnigan
1016 MAT mass spectrometer (Department of Archeometry, University of Cape Town). The filtrate
1017 was used for analysis (S_T) of ambient concentrations at the end of the incubation (T_t) for final
1018 aqueous enrichment (R_t).

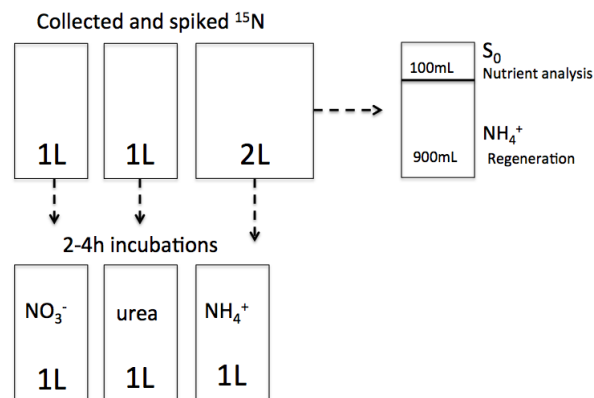


Figure 2.2: Simple schematic of the different bottles collected and deployed for *in situ* incubations. The 2 L bottle was spiked with $^{15}\text{NH}_4^+\text{Cl}$ and decanted into two 1 L bottles. One was frozen for later determination of final aqueous enrichment (R_t), and the 1 L other included in the *in situ* incubations.

1019

1020 **Isotope dilution**

1021 A measured amount (0.9 μmol) of NH_4Cl carrier solution (10 $\mu\text{mol mL}^{-1}$) was added to the 900
1022 mL of remaining NH_4^+ filtrate (Fig. 2.2), to ensure sufficient NH_4^+ concentrations for diffusion
1023 recovery and detection, prior to freezing. Within 1 month after the sampling period, the bottles
1024 were defrosted and a heaped spoon of magnesium oxide (MgO) was added to the thawed
1025 bottle to raise the pH to ~ 9 so that NH_4^+ would be released in its gaseous form, NH_3 . Based
1026 on Probyn (1987), halved precombusted 25 mm Whatmann GF/F filters were wetted with 0.1
1027 mL of potassium hydrogen sulphate (KHSO_4) solution and suspended from the bottle lid to
1028 recover the diffused NH_3 . The bottles were left for ± 2 weeks, after which time the filters were
1029 removed, dried overnight at 60°C and packed into tin capsules for mass spectrophotometer
1030 $^{15}\text{N}:^{14}\text{N}$ determination. These values are given as r_0 and r_t , stipulated in equation 2.8 as r_x .

1031 **Calculations**

1032 All abbreviations and units for variables and parameters in the calculations are given in Table
1033 2.1.

1034 **Uptake Rates** The net transport rates (ρ) of nitrogen ($\mu\text{molN L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$) from the substrate into
1035 the cell were calculated as:

$$\rho = \nu * PN \quad (2.4)$$

1036 where ν is the specific uptake rate (h^{-1}) and PN is the particulate nitrogen ($\mu\text{molN L}^{-1}$).
1037 Biomass specific uptake rates (ν) of N were calculated as in Dugdale and Wilkerson (1986):

$$\nu = {}^{15}N_p/T * R \quad (2.5)$$

1038 where ${}^{15}N_p$ is the particulate A% excess at T_t corrected for natural abundance (= $\text{A}\%E_{sample} -$
1039 $\text{A}\%E_{natural}$), T is the incubation time (h) and R is the aqueous Atom % ($^{15}\text{N}/\text{total } ^{15+14}\text{N}$) ratio.
1040 The calculation of R for NH_4^+ is markedly different from that of NO_3^- and urea, owing to significant

1041 regeneration of NH_4^+ during the incubation period. R for NO_3^- and urea corrects for the natural
 1042 abundance of $^{15}\text{N}_{natural}$ (0.3663%) as well as the purity of the supplier's assay of ^{15}N stock
 1043 standard (*spike*):

$$R = \frac{(spike * 99.6 + S_0 * ^{15}N_{\%natural})}{(spike * S_0)} \quad (2.6)$$

1044 For νNH_4 , R was calculated using Glibert et al. (1982), with the notation R_G , assuming an
 1045 exponential decrease in R over the time course:

$$R_G = (R_0 / \ln(R_0/R_T)) * (1 - (R_T/R_0)) \quad (2.7)$$

1046 R_0 and R_T were the calculated atom % and give the ratio of ^{15}N to $^{15+14}\text{N}$ in aqueous phase after
 1047 spiking at the start and end of the incubation respectively. R_0 and R_T , hereafter each denoted
 1048 in equations for the sake of simplicity as R_x , were calculated using aqueous measurements of
 1049 ^{15}N , as follows:

$$R_x = \frac{(0.9 * S_x + 9) * r_x - 9 * ^{14}N_{\%nat.abundance}}{(0.9 * S_x)} \quad (2.8)$$

1050 where r_x is the atom% of $^{15}\text{NH}_4^+$, measured by diffusion from the aqueous phase. In the cal-
 1051 culation of uptake rates, aqueous enrichments (A%) were corrected for natural abundance of
 1052 0.3663 (A%E). It can be expected that the relative standard deviation for these measurements
 1053 of nitrogen uptake rates is ca. 10%, given what has been found in previous experiments (Gandhi
 1054 et al., 2010; Cavagna et al., 2011) of similar atom % enrichments. For urea uptake the standard
 1055 deviation is expected to be slightly higher, as seen in Bronk and Glibert (1993).

Table 2.1: List of variables and parameters used in the text and for uptake calculations

T	Incubation duration	
S_0	measured nitrogen concentration at start of incubation	μmolL^{-1}
S_T	measured nitrogen concentration at end of incubation	μmolL^{-1}
R	$^{15}\text{N}:^{15+14}\text{N}$ in aqueous phase	atom % excess
R_G	$^{15}\text{N}:^{15+14}\text{N}$ in aqueous phase from Glibert (1982) calculation	atom % excess
R_0	$^{15}\text{N}:^{15+14}\text{N}$ in aqueous phase at start of incubation	atom % excess
R_t	$^{15}\text{N}:^{15+14}\text{N}$ in aqueous phase at end of incubation	atom % excess
R_x	Used in equation to denote either R_0 or R_t	atom % excess
$^{15}\text{N}p$	Particulate ^{15}N	atom %
ν	Biomass specific uptake rate	h^{-1}
ρ	Net transport rate	$\mu\text{molL}^{-1}\text{h}^{-1}$
r_0	measured regenerated aqueous $^{15}\text{N}:^{15+14}\text{N}$ at start of experiment	atom % excess
r_T	measured regenerated aqueous $^{15}\text{N}:^{15+14}\text{N}$ at end of experiment	atom % excess
r_x	Used in equation to denote either r_0 or r_t	atom % excess
spike	purity of the suppliers assay of ^{15}N stock standard	μmolL^{-1}

Data Analysis

In order to quantify the influence of the different variables on the uptake rates, several general linear models (GLM) were explored, assuming a Gaussian error distribution.

$$vN (\text{h}^{-1}) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 \text{total } N (\mu\text{mol } L^{-1}) + \beta_2 D_{eff} (\mu\text{m}) + \alpha_{taxon} + \varepsilon \quad (2.9)$$

where β_0 is the intercept, β_1 is the coefficient for total nitrogen, β_2 is the coefficient for the effective diameter (μm), α_{taxon} is a vector of parameters describing the influence of each phytoplankton group (diatoms, dinoflagellates, *Myrionecta rubra*, *Prorocentrum triestinum*, mixed) and ε represents the residual error. Groups in this instance are categorised by percentage in cells per litre, where >40% dominance of a specific group in an assemblage. *Myrionecta rubra* is an exception, where dominance (cells L^{-1}) lies between 32-63%. Where no clear dominance was found the assemblage was considered mixed. The same GLM model was used for the uptake of total N, NO_3^- , NH_4^+ and urea. Mass specific uptake rates were used in the analysis to reduce the potential bias associated with the high biomass accounted for in absolute uptake rates. Further analyses were carried out for each nitrogen source to assess which groups were

1069 taking up which nitrogen source at what rate, by comparing the least squares mean uptake rate
1070 per group after statistically removing the effect of cell size and ambient nutrient concentration.
1071 Vector parameters for the community structure are divided into five taxonomic groups, where
1072 the relative sizes of the values indicate which taxa have low or high uptake rates.

1073 **Results**

1074 Wind patterns in both case studies in 2004 and 2005 were dominated by upwelling-favourable,
1075 southerly winds, with sustained periods of wind relaxation and reversal. Cumulative net wind
1076 transport was much higher in 2004, i.e. winds were stronger (Fig. 2.3) than 2005 (Fig. 2.7). On
1077 average, particulate nitrogen, Chl-*a* and primary productivity were higher in 2005 than 2004.
1078 Average effective diameters were greater and *f*-ratios higher for the entire assemblage during
1079 2004 than 2005 (Table 2.2). *Myrionecta rubra* dominated in 2004 in association with *Skele-*
1080 *tonema* spp. and *Prorocentrum triestinum* dominated in 2005.

Table 2.2: Summary data from the fixed station in 2004 and 2005 at Lamberts Bay: Nutrient concentrations (NH_4^+ , NO_3^- , urea, NO_2^-); Chlorophyll-*a* (Chl-*a*), particulate nitrogen (PN); *f*-ratio and primary productivity (PP), effective diameter of the entire assemblage (D_{eff}) and dominant species (%). * indicates a patch away from the station. ** indicates a sample where *Syracosphaera pulchra* (49%) is in high coexistence with *Prorocentrum triestinum* (46%). % dominance by numbers of cells.

date	NH_4^+ ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$)	NO_3^- ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$)	Urea ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$)	Chl- <i>a</i> (mg m^{-3})	PN ($\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$)	<i>f</i> -ratio	PP ($\text{mgC m}^{-3}\text{h}^{-1}$)	D_{eff} (μm)	Dominant Species	(%)
29/02/2004	0.10	1.27	0.15	17.96	42.75	0.61	63.30	31.54	<i>M. rubra</i>	63
01/03/2004	0.80	20.41	0.66	3.55	6.52	0.50	17.29	15.55	mixed	-
02/03/2004	1.04	22.95	0.47	3.09	4.06	0.64	17.59	12.79	mixed	-
03/03/2004	0.66	22.05	4.39	6.85	7.82	0.40	31.95	17.09	<i>Skeletonema</i> spp.	55
07/03/2004	0.19	20.46	0.57	10.29	9.19	0.81	86.17	15.02	<i>Skeletonema</i> spp.	58
27/02/2004*	0.42	0.10	0.31	13.49	16.67	0.09	66.05	15.33	Mixed	32
08/03/2004*	0.17	0.72	0.25	58.17	34.44	0.59	291.58	22.22	Mixed	-
09/03/2004*	0.10	5.59	0.35	54.51	26.04	0.82	152.59	23.54	Mixed	-
10/03/2004*	0.08	0.61	0.93	149.07	104.09	0.56	303.26	29.61	<i>M. rubra</i>	34
11/03/2004*	0.55	23.60	0.90	39.79	18.54	0.75	67.45	27.63	<i>M. rubra</i>	46
Mean	0.41	13.29	1.57	32.10	25.34	0.58	122.87	21.03		
SD	0.34	10.36	1.44	41.22	27.24	0.17	142.28	6.81		
16/03/2005	0.50	0.11	2.64	46.47	53.49	0.04	169.89	13.05	<i>P. triestinum</i>	64
17/03/2005	0.50	0.05	0.91	13.99	24.35	0.04	137.79	14.83	mixed	-
18/03/2005	0.19	0.13	2.63	11.04	21.65	0.07	79.28	13.34	<i>P. triestinum</i>	56
21/03/2005	0.31	0.18	1.47	14.70	27.93	0.10	118.57	15.94	<i>S. pulchra</i> **	49
24/03/2005	0.00	0.02	0.52	42.97	42.34	0.07	125.46	13.14	<i>P. triestinum</i>	82
29/03/2005	0.03	0.06	0.25	163.69	129.37	0.15	339.87	14.27	<i>P. triestinum</i>	98
30/03/2005	0.13	0.23	1.19	172.45	122.49	0.16	234.84	14.90	<i>P. triestinum</i>	98
31/03/2005	0.08	0.06	0.54	184.15	109.57	0.10	154.74	14.67	<i>P. triestinum</i>	90
01/04/2005	0.33	1.15	0.99	201.68	146.69	0.36	175.76	16.33	<i>P. triestinum</i>	88
02/04/2005	3.35	20.34	1.60	9.64	17.41	0.48	4.97	29.42	<i>Protoperidinium</i> spp.	46
03/04/2005	0.35	22.86	1.33	21.92	45.91	0.62	13.55	29.78	<i>Protoperidinium</i> spp.	50
05/04/2005	0.54	0.57	0.99	39.61	49.85	0.30	23.16	31.86	<i>C. furca</i>	33
Mean	0.53	3.81	1.26	76.86	65.92	0.21	131.49	18.46		
SD	0.91	8.33	0.76	77.99	47.20	0.19	96.63	7.26		

1081 **Case Study 1: *Myrionecta rubra***

1082 **Environmental conditions** A period of relaxed northerly winds was observed from 10
 1083 February until 24 February (Fig. 2.3). At the start of the study (25 February), the winds reverted
 1084 to predominately upwelling-favourable, and remained so for the rest of the study, with the ex-
 1085 ception of a two day relaxation period, which occurred on 6 March (Fig. 2.3). Diurnal variability
 1086 was evident in a shift between light northerly winds in the morning and southerly winds in the
 1087 afternoon. Cumulative winds show a net equator-ward direction, indicating upwelling-favourable
 1088 conditions. Temperatures at the start of the study were up to 17°C and strong stratification was
 1089 observed in the upper 5 m (Fig. 2.4a), reflecting the prior relaxation in upwelling-favourable
 1090 winds. With the increase in wind stress from 27 February (shown by the greater distance be-
 1091 tween black points indicated in Figure 2.3), temperatures gradually cooled until the entire water
 1092 column was well mixed from 1 March onwards, and surface temperatures were around 11°C for
 1093 the remainder of the study (Fig. 2.4a) .

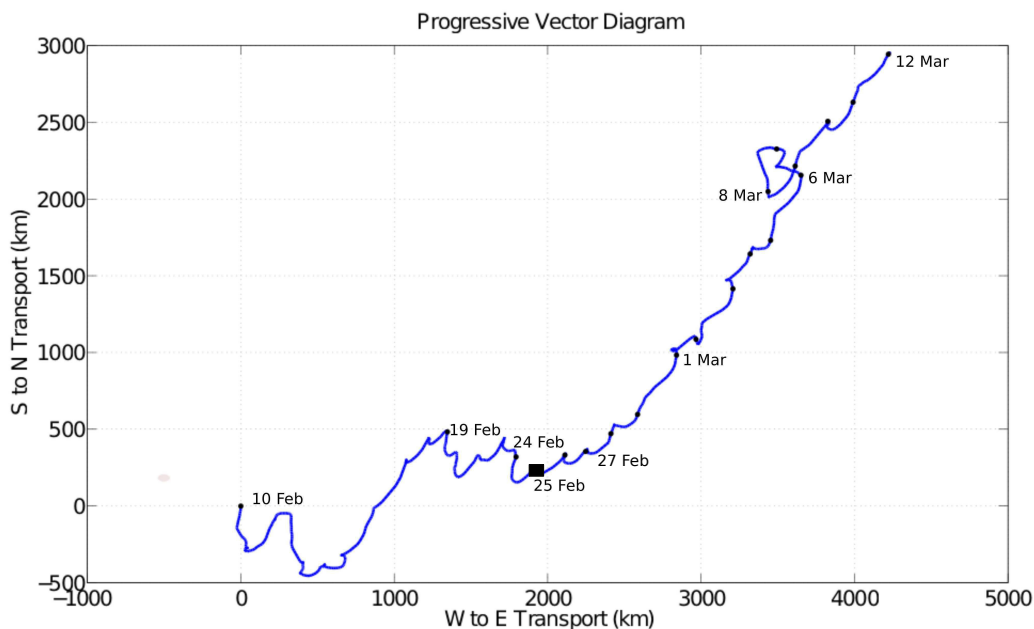


Figure 2.3: Progressive wind plot from Nortier Weather Station at Lamberts Bay. Data starts from 10 February and sampling period starts 25 February. Black dots for the start of each day are placed at 24:00 hrs from the previous day. ■ indicates the start of the sampling period. Data provided by Weather SA.

1094 *Myrionecta rubra* peaked in abundance at 1×10^6 cells L^{-1} on 29 February (Fig. 2.4). At the

1095 onset of upwelling conditions, temperatures cooled and a diatom *Skeletonema* spp. gradually
 1096 increased in numbers, with concentrations as high as 3×10^6 cells L^{-1} . Highest Chl-a was
 1097 observed below the thermocline (Fig. 2.4b) at 5 m, where there were low counts of all species
 1098 at the surface between 25 February-7 March (Fig. 2.4b and c). *Myrionecta rubra* numbers
 1099 were low at the sampling station, but patches sampled away from the station showed a strong
 1100 *M. rubra* presence (Table 2.2). Maximum biomass was observed during *M. rubra* dominance
 1101 ($\sim 46\%$), measured by PN ($104 \mu\text{molN } L^{-1}$) and Chl-a concentration ($149 \text{ mg } m^{-3}$), and was
 1102 associated with primary productivity values of $303 \text{ mgC } m^{-3} h^{-1}$. There was high variability in
 1103 NO_3^- concentrations and a large range in biomass (PN) as well as Chl-a concentrations during
 1104 *M. rubra* dominance.

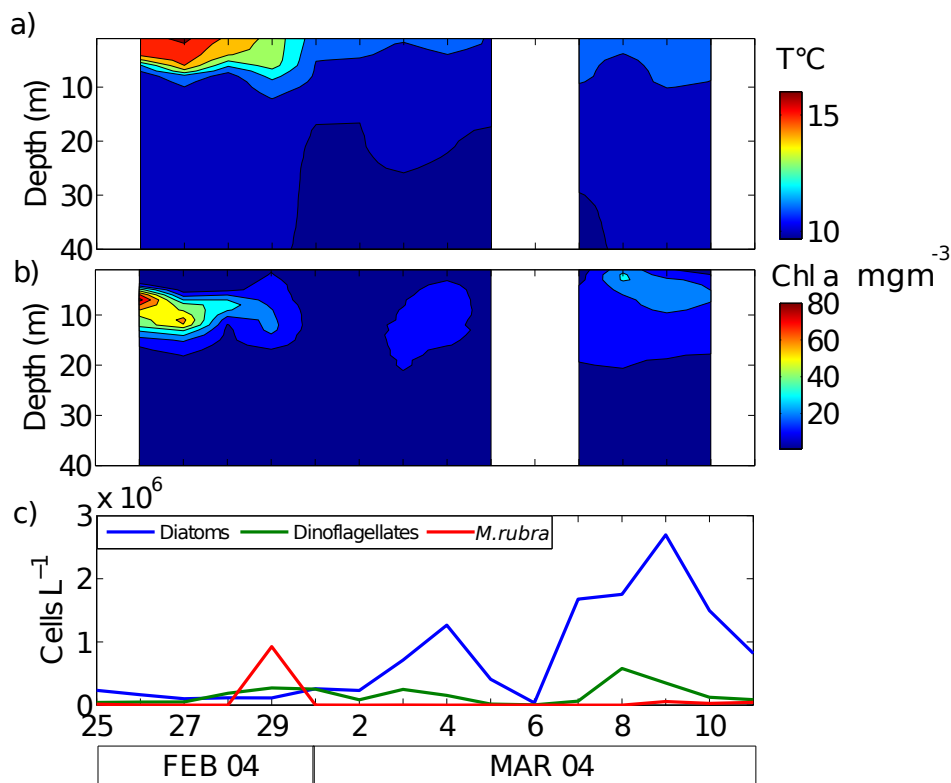


Figure 2.4: Time series from 25 February to 11 March 2004 at Lamberts Bay showing CTD-derived a) temperature, b) Chl-a and c) microscopy counts of phytoplankton cells at 0m. White bands indicate missing data. Data from Pitcher and Probyn.

1105 **Nitrogen uptake** NO_3^- concentrations were initially low ($<5 \mu\text{molN } L^{-1}$) (Fig 2.5a,d) but,
 1106 with the onset of upwelling-favourable winds from 27 February (Fig. 2.3), concentrations of

1107 NO_3^- increased ($\pm 20 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) (Fig. 2.5a,d), reflecting a period of active upwelling. ρNH_4^+
 1108 was relatively consistent throughout the sample period ($0.067 \pm 0.03 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$). As NO_3^-
 1109 concentrations increased, the persistence of 11°C waters at the surface was maintained (Fig.
 1110 2.4) and NO_3^- uptake rates steadily increased and reached a maximum of $0.35 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$
 1111 in association with the diatom *Skeletonema* spp. Average % dominance (by cell numbers) for
 1112 *M. rubra* was 46% (Table 2.2). When *M. rubra* contributed most to total biomass (as illustrated
 1113 by largest effective diameters and high cell counts), ρNO_3^- was relatively high (maximum of
 1114 $0.30 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$ and maximum $f\text{-ratio}=0.74$) but never exceeded the rates observed when
 1115 *Skeletonema* spp. dominated total cell counts. At selected patches away from station 3, ρNO_3^-
 1116 reached a maximum ($0.55 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$) (Fig. 2.6b). Although *M. rubra* were not as numerous
 1117 (cells L^{-1}) as the diatom/dinoflagellate species (Fig. 2.6c), their large cell diameters ($\pm 30 \mu\text{m}$)
 1118 indicates their disproportionate dominance of the assemblage biomass and nitrogen uptake
 1119 signal.

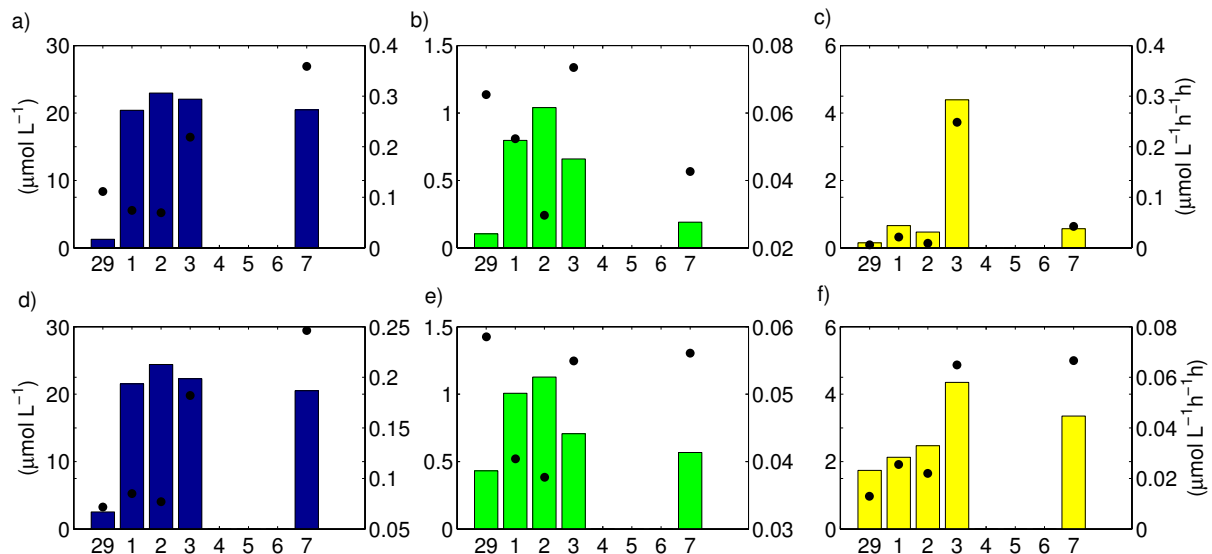


Figure 2.5: Time series of the nitrogen dynamics at Lamberts Bay station for the sample period between 29 February to 7 March 2004. Left axis, nutrient concentrations ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) of NO_3^- (blue bars), NH_4^+ (green bars) and urea (yellow bars) and right axis, uptake rates ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$) (black dots) at a-c) 0 m and d-f) 5 m. Data from Probyn.

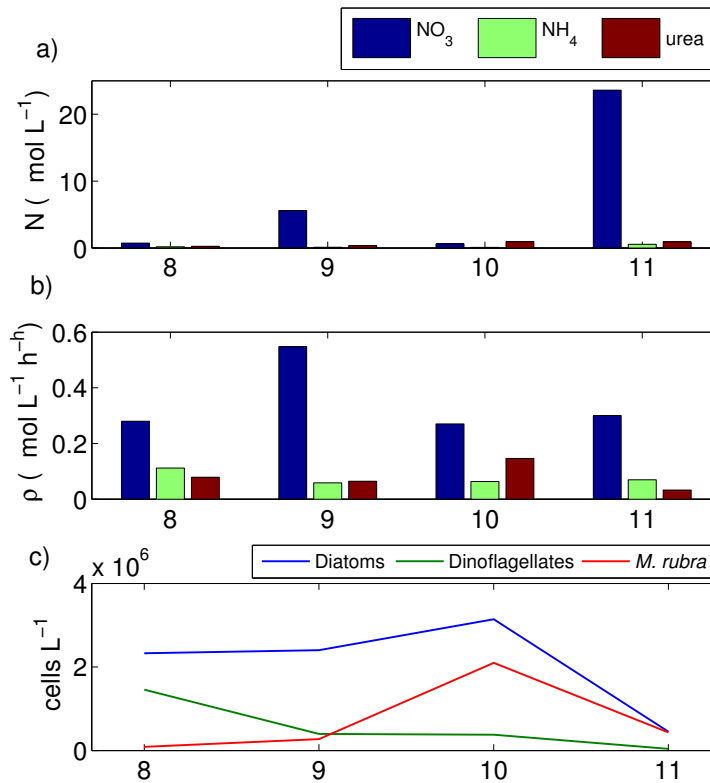


Figure 2.6: Nitrogen dynamics in Lamberts Bay, 8-11 March 2004, at high biomass patches away from station 3. a) N concentrations, b) absolute uptake rates of nitrogen and c) dominant community structure. Data from Pitcher and Probyn.

1120 Case Study 2: *Prorocentrum triestinum*

1121 **Environmental conditions** The 2005 study, starting 15 March, was preceded by predom-
 1122 inately southerly, upwelling-favourable winds (Fig. 2.7). From 15-20 March, the wind reversed
 1123 to north-westerly before southerly winds recommenced. Two further relaxation events occurred
 1124 from 26-27 March and 4-6 April. Surface temperatures remained at 16°C from 15-24 March,
 1125 with warm waters extending as deep as 20 m on 19 March (Fig. 2.8b). The thermocline shal-
 1126 lowed after 24 March, with surface expression of cold waters of 11°C from 1 April onwards. The
 1127 relaxation event of 4 April was reflected in the 1°C temperature increase in surface waters.

1128 The community showed an initial dominance of diatoms (*Chaetoceros* spp.) followed by high
 1129 dinoflagellate numbers (*Prorocentrum triestinum*) from 29 March until 2 April (Fig. 2.8c). Cell
 1130 counts were comparatively low (ranging between 2.2 - 9 x 10⁶ cells L⁻¹) between 16-23 March,

1131 after which counts gradually increased and the assemblage was dominated by *Prorocentrum*
1132 *triestinum*, reaching a maximum of 34×10^6 cells L^{-1} on 30 March. *Prorocentrum triestinum*
1133 dominated the assemblage from 29 March - 1 April (Table 2.2), comprising as much as 88-
1134 98% (% contribution by cells L^{-1}). Maximum rate of primary productivity during this time was
1135 $339 \text{ mgC m}^{-3} \text{ h}^{-1}$ and was seen in association with highest particulate nitrogen ($146.69 \mu\text{mol}$
1136 L^{-1}). As the water column became more mixed from 2 April, cell numbers were dominated by a
1137 dinoflagellate *Ceratium furca*, peaking in dominance on 5-6 April.

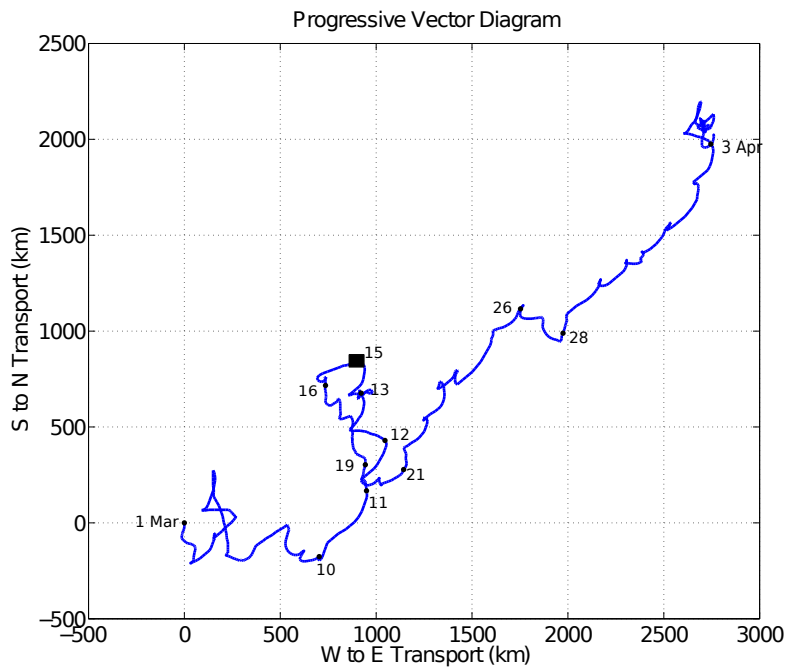


Figure 2.7: Progressive wind plot from Nortier Weather Station at Lamberts Bay in 2005. Data starts from 1 March and sampling period starts 15 March 2005. Black markers thereafter indicate the start of each day. Note the difference in axes values compared to the progressive wind plot for 2004, with net transport much reduced during the 2005 sample period. ■ indicates start of sampling period. Data provided by Weather SA.

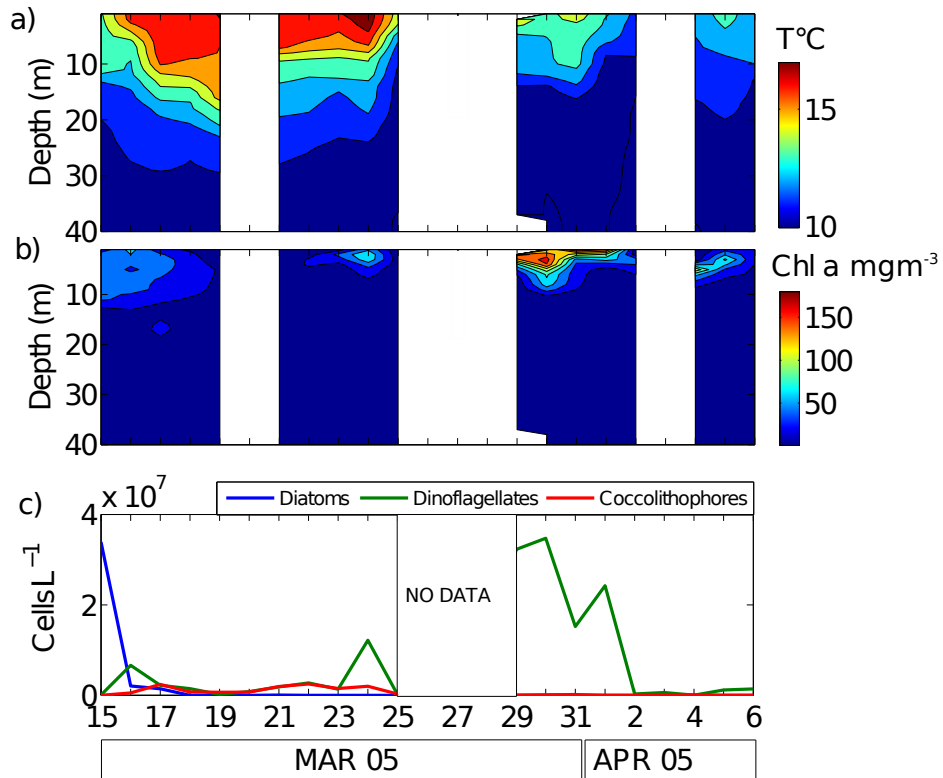


Figure 2.8: Time series from 15 March to 6 April 2005 at Lamberts Bay showing CTD-derived a) temperature, b) Chl-a and c) microscopy counts of phytoplankton cells at 0 m. White bands indicate days when data were not collected or are missing. Data from Pitcher and Probyn.

1138 **Nitrogen uptake** Initially, urea concentrations were highest of all nitrogen species, with a
 1139 maximum of $2.6 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$ on 16 March (Fig. 2.9c,f). The stratified water column and nutrient-
 1140 depleted conditions were reflected in the uptake rates, with surface uptake rates of urea and
 1141 NH_4^+ ranging between 0.1 and $0.4 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$ and NO_3^- being relatively low. Highest uptake
 1142 rates during *P. triestinum* dominance were those of urea, suggesting it was an important source
 1143 of nitrogen during stratified conditions.

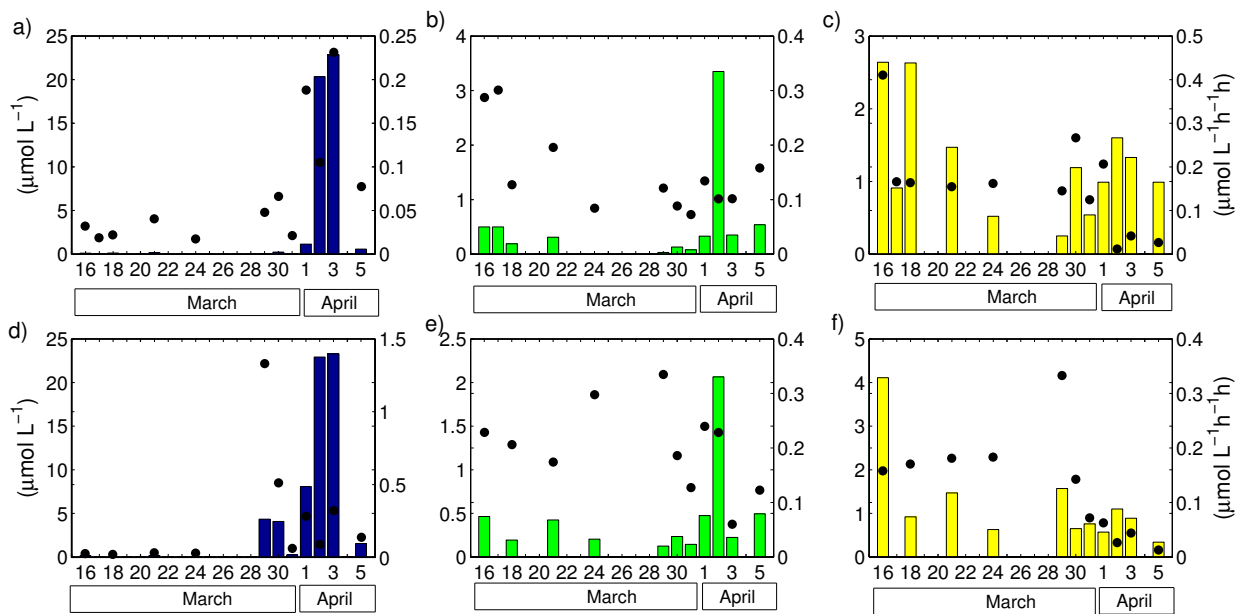


Figure 2.9: Summary of nutrient dynamics at Lamberts Bay station for 2005 between 16 March and 5 April. Left axis, nutrient concentrations ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) of NO_3^- (blue bars), NH_4^+ (green bars) and urea (yellow bars) and right axis, uptake rates ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$) (black dots) at a-c) 0 m and d-f) 5 m. Data from Probyn.

1144 **Nitrogen resource partitioning** A GLM was used to assess how much of the variability in
 1145 mass specific uptake rates could be explained by different predictive variables, in order to as-
 1146 sess whether *M. rubra* and *P. triestinum* displayed any particular strategy for nitrogen utilisation.
 1147 The GLM model for nitrogen uptake that best matched the data incorporated the effects of amb-
 1148 bient nitrogen concentration (total nitrogen, NO_3^- , NH_4^+ or urea), cell size and taxa (diatoms,
 1149 dinoflagellates, *M. rubra*, *P. triestinum* and mixed) (Fig. 2.10). Ambient nutrient concentration
 1150 and taxa had significant influences on the uptake of total N and NO_3^- , and the influence of cell
 1151 size was significant only for NH_4^+ (Table 2.3). When removing the effects of total N concentration
 1152 and size from the predicted values (Fig. 2.11), the least squares mean uptake rates of each
 1153 group indicated that uptake rates by diatoms on a whole were faster for all nitrogen species.
 1154 Statistically, *P. triestinum* was not dissimilar to dinoflagellates as a whole group, and *M.rubra*
 1155 took up total nitrogen relatively fast but not as fast as diatoms.

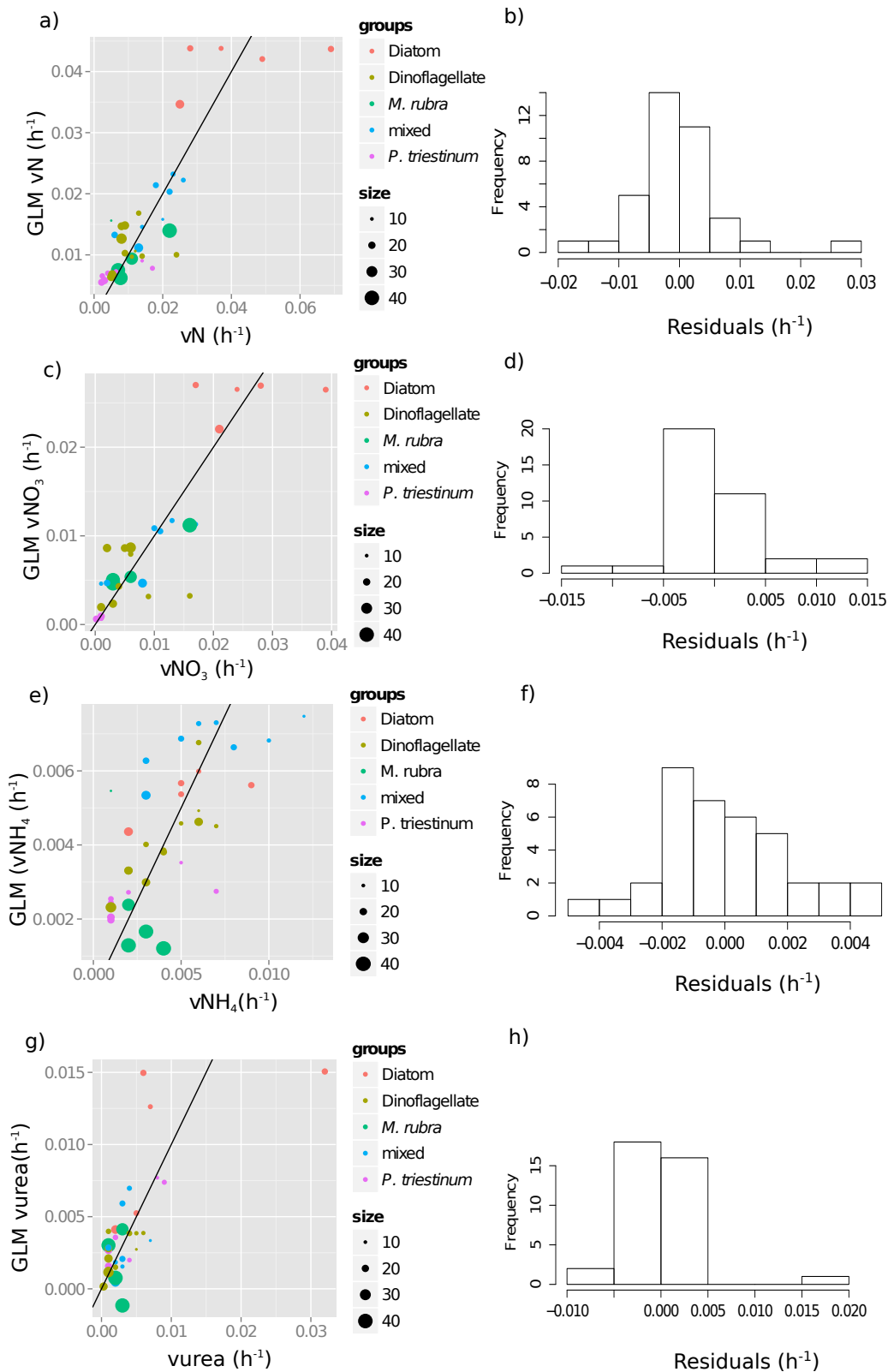


Figure 2.10: Results of the GLM. Comparison between observed *in situ* and predicted values of the different nitrogen components (a,c,e,g) and the distribution of model residuals indicating normality (b, d, f, h). Size represents the effective diameter (D_{eff}) in μm and are estimates of the dominant size class following equation 2.2. Dominant groups are defined by >40% dominance of a specific group in an assemblage. *Myrionecta rubra* is an exception where dominance (cells L^{-1}) lies between 32-63%. Where no clear dominance was found the assemblage was considered mixed.

Table 2.3: Summary statistics of the GLM for the uptake of each nitrogen source (following equation 2.9), with N corresponding to either total nitrogen, NO_3^- , NH_4^+ , urea. DF= 36
* indicates significance (critical value=0.05)

Parameter	Coefficient	SE	t	p
Total N $r^2 = 0.67$ AIC=-239.74				
β_0	0.0393	0.0055	7.115	6.5×10^{-8} *
β_1 total N	0.0003	0.0001	2.353	0.02 *
β_2 size	-0.0003	0.0002	-1.365	0.18
α Dino	-0.0269	0.0045	-6.014	1.3×10^{-6} *
α <i>M. rubra</i>	-0.0224	0.0063	-3.552	0.001 *
α mixed	-0.0217	0.0047	-4.656	1.0×10^{-5} *
α <i>P. triestinum</i>	-0.0286	0.0054	-5.295	2.1×10^{-6} *
NO_3^- $r^2 = 0.70$ AIC=-275.98				
β_0	0.0206	0.0032	6.52	3.33×10^{-8} *
β_1 NO_3^-	0.0003	-0.0001	3.18	0.003 *
β_2 size	0.0000	0.0001	-0.08	0.94
α Dino	-0.0185	0.0026	-7.07	7.3×10^{-8} *
α <i>M. rubra</i>	-0.0159	0.0037	-4.30	3.1×10^{-8} *
α mixed	-0.0170	0.0027	-5.85	2.11×10^{-6} *
α <i>P. triestinum</i>	-0.0198	0.0032	-6.27	6.5×10^{-7} *
NH_4^+ $r^2 = 0.75$ AIC=-338.09				
β_0	0.007	0.001	5.07	1.9×10^{-5} *
β_1 NH_4^+	0.001	0.001	1.38	0.18
β_2 size	0.000	0.000	-2.24	0.03 *
α Dino	-0.002	0.001	-1.27	0.22
α <i>M. rubra</i>	-0.001	0.002	-0.64	0.53
α mixed	0.001	0.001	0.67	0.51
α <i>P. triestinum</i>	-0.003	0.003	-2.21	0.03 *
Urea $r^2 = 0.75$ AIC=-292.22				
β_0	0.0049	0.0035	1.41	0.17
β_1 urea	0.0026	0.0008	3.45	0.001 *
β_2 size	-0.0001	0.0001	-0.67	0.51
α Dino	-0.0040	0.0025	-1.62	0.12
α <i>M. rubra</i>	-0.0036	0.0031	-1.16	0.25
α mixed	-0.0033	0.0027	-1.26	0.22
α <i>P. triestinum</i>	-0.0034	0.0026	-1.27	0.21

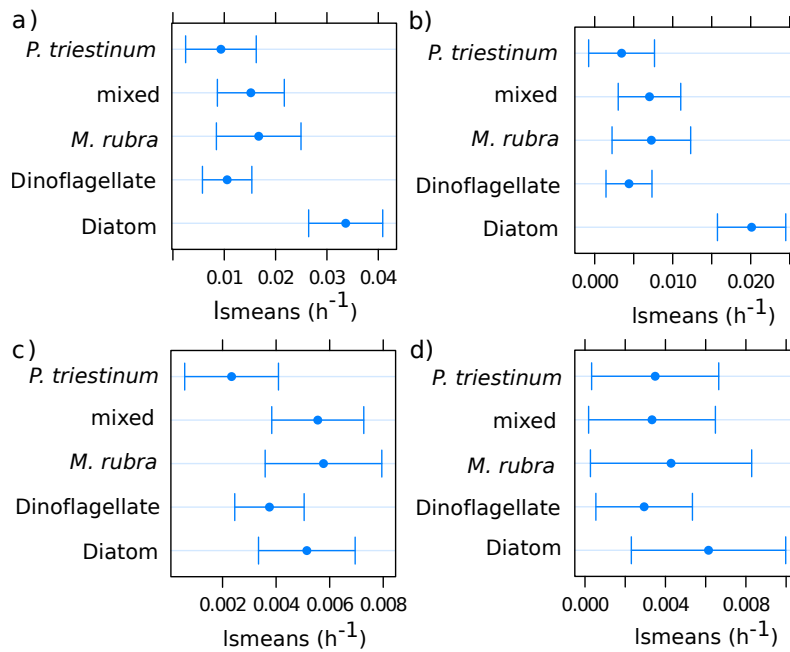


Figure 2.11: Comparison of least square means (lsmean) of the uptake rates of the different nitrogen sources by different phytoplankton groups, a) total N b) NO_3^- , c) NH_4^+ , and d) urea. These values represent uptake rates after removing the effects of size and ambient nutrient concentration.

1156 **Effective diameter as a size proxy** Measured mass-specific uptake rates (h^{-1}) and calcu-
 1157 lated effective diameters were combined for 2004 and 2005. A significant negative relationship
 1158 existed between D_{eff} and the uptake of regenerated forms of N (Fig. 2.12b,c) but not for NO_3^-
 1159 (Fig. 2.12a). Highest NO_3^- mass-specific uptake rates were by diatoms. Largest cell sizes
 1160 were when *M. rubra* dominated total biomass. A large range in vNH_4^+ was observed when the
 1161 assemblage was dominated by *P. triestinum*, which was also associated with high uptake rates
 1162 of urea.

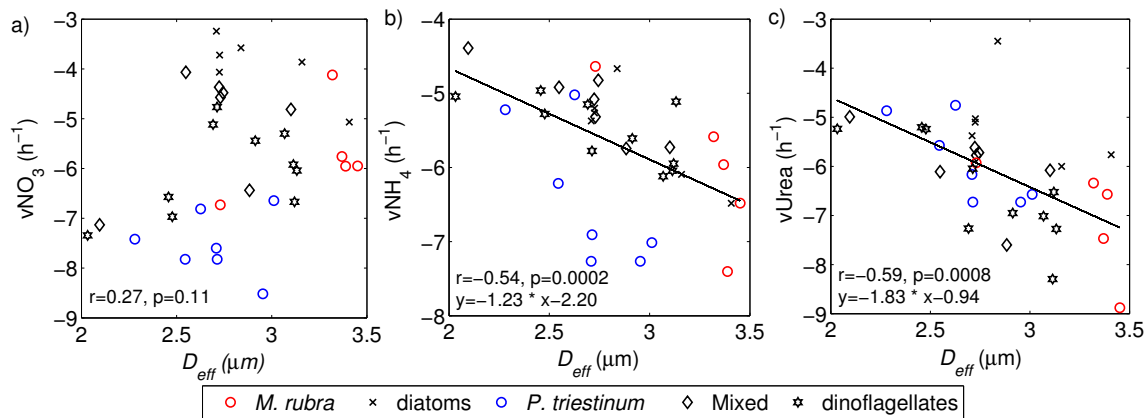


Figure 2.12: Log-log relationships between mass-specific transport rate (v) and D_{eff} , of a) NO_3^- b) NH_4^+ and c) Urea (h^{-1}) with colours representing >40% dominance of a specific group in an assemblage. *Myrionecta rubra* is an exception where dominance (cells L^{-1}) lies between 32-63%. Where no clear dominance was found the assemblage was considered mixed.

1163 Samples dominated by small-celled phytoplankton ($<20 \mu\text{m}$) corresponded to warmest ob-
 1164 served temperatures and low f -ratios (Fig. 2.13). Assemblages characterised by a large D_{eff}
 1165 ($>20 \mu\text{m}$) were not observed in water warmer than 14°C . D_{eff} and f -ratios were variable between
 1166 10 and 14°C . Assemblages with *P. triestinum* dominance were characterised by D_{eff} between
 1167 6 - $28 \mu\text{m}$, within a temperature range of 13 - 18°C , with maximum f -ratios of 0.36 . Assemblages
 1168 with *M. rubra* dominance had large D_{eff} (28 - $40 \mu\text{m}$) with f -ratios as high as 0.74 . *M. rubra*
 1169 were mainly found in cool waters, associated with high f -ratios (0.74 - 0.1), and *P. triestinum*
 1170 were found in warm waters and with low f -ratios. Independently, temperature and f -ratio have
 1171 a strong negative correlation ($r = -0.66$, $p = 0.008$), and D_{eff} and f -ratio are positively correlated
 1172 ($r = 0.46$, $p = 0.008$).

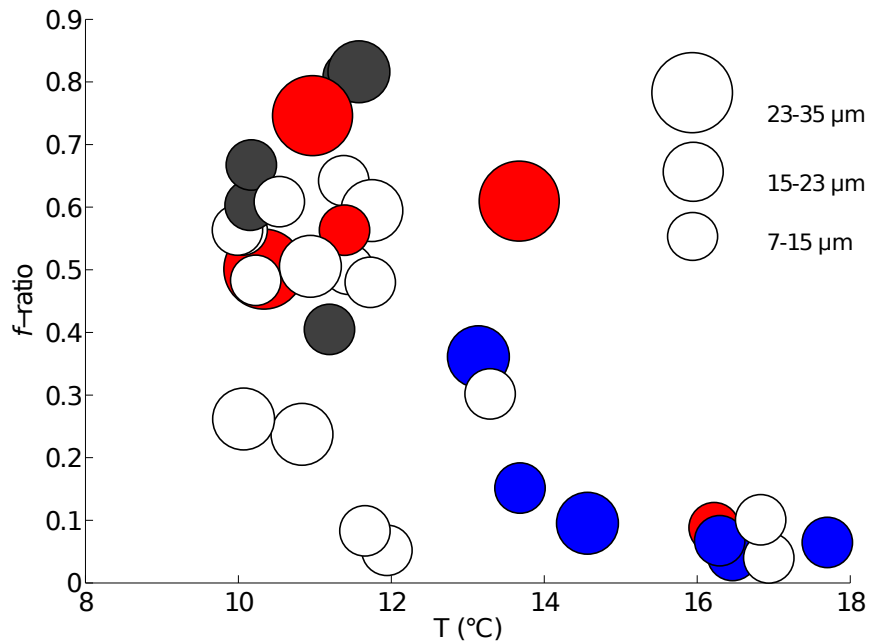


Figure 2.13: The relationship between effective diameter (D_{eff}), f -ratio and temperature for all data collected in 2004 and 2005 from 0 m and 5 m. The size of the data point is proportional to the D_{eff} of the assemblage (normalised to the mean D_{eff} for proportionate plotting), categorised into three size bins: 7-15 μm , 15-23 μm and 23-35 μm . The shading corresponds as follows: Red - *M. rubra*; blue- *P. triestinum*; Black - Diatoms; White - mixed.

1173 Discussion

1174 The nitrogen dynamics of two case studies were explored in relation to environmental variables
1175 and community structure. The two separate case studies are of particular interest due to the
1176 proliferation of two harmful algal species to exceptionally high biomass. In 2004, a ciliate, *Myri-*
1177 *onecta rubra*, a large cell ($\pm 30 \mu\text{m}$ diameter), displayed high f -ratios when NO_3^- was available
1178 and was present along the entire temperature range of the upwelling/downwelling cycle, be-
1179 tween 10-17°C. *Prorocentrum triestinum*, a dinoflagellate with an observed average D_{eff} of 14
1180 μm , displayed higher uptake rates of regenerated forms of nitrogen. Aside from the varying
1181 conditions and influences on the nitrogen utilisation by the different assemblages, these as-
1182 sessments reveal the diversity of strategies employed by harmful algal species. These data
1183 also provide a suitable platform for testing how well the single size proxy, D_{eff} , could represent

1184 the principal nitrogen signals observed during these two separate blooms. Such a metric is the
1185 output of an algorithm (applied to MODIS sensor data) that was developed to provide a rele-
1186 vant indication of the potential of harmful algal blooms in the region, which are characteristically
1187 large celled, high biomass blooms.

1188 **Characteristic features of the case studies**

1189 **Ecological windows** Wind patterns for both 2004 and 2005 were typical of southern Benguela
1190 summer months, with upwelling-favourable winds dominating. Both 2004 and 2005 study peri-
1191 ods were preceded by relaxed winds, and warm, nutrient-deplete surface waters. These periods
1192 of sustained wind relaxation (between 2-5 days), characteristic of late summer (March-April),
1193 are considered to be an optimal window for HAB development in the southern Benguela (Pitcher
1194 and Nelson, 2006; Fawcett et al., 2007). Wind and wind-driven processes influencing phyto-
1195 plankton species composition (Margalef et al., 1979), bloom retention and advection Pitcher
1196 and Weeks (2006) are key determinants in the presence and proliferation of HABs. Shifts be-
1197 tween pulses of upwelling-favourable winds and relaxation are well established patterns in the
1198 succession between diatoms (upwelling-favoured) and dinoflagellates (downwelling/relaxation-
1199 favoured) (Pitcher et al., 1991). Variability in diurnal wind patterns (i.e. coastal breezes) as well
1200 as local inertial surface currents are suggested to be of first order significance to phytoplankton
1201 phenology (Lucas et al., 2014). Processes that function at such timescales could explain how
1202 very different water column dynamics and community structure can occur at similar stages in
1203 the upwelling/downwelling favourable wind cycle, as seen in this study.

1204 *Myrionecta rubra* were present over the entire upwelling/downwelling cycle (Fig. 2.14), even
1205 in recently upwelled waters as cold as 10°C. The ability to withstand fluctuating conditions is
1206 suggested to be linked to its mixotrophic capabilities (Stoecker et al., 1989) and mobility (Jon-
1207 sson and Tiselius, 1990). *Myrionecta rubra* displayed high levels of patchiness, as was evi-
1208 denced by the additional sampling away from the fixed station. A high degree of patchiness
1209 appears to be characteristic of *M. rubra* blooms, as other studies have also observed simi-
1210 lar patterns in spatial heterogeneity (Montagnes and Lynn, 1989; Bulit et al., 2004). Crawford

1211 (1989) hypothesised that *M. rubra* bloom proliferation is from the combined effects of high light
 1212 intensity, low turbulence and increased organic compounds produced by a preceding diatom
 1213 bloom. A decrease in water column turbulence has also been suggested to play an important
 1214 role in the initial surface aggregation of large numbers of bloom-forming *M. rubra* cells (Craw-
 1215 ford, 1989; Herfort et al., 2011). The proliferation of *M. rubra* in association with diatoms has
 1216 often been observed (Cloern et al., 1994; Crawford, 1989) and is reaffirmed in this study.

1217 Dinoflagellate blooms are well known to be associated with very specific habitat conditions
 1218 (Smayda and Reynolds, 2003). In this study, *P. triestinum* blooms were observed in waters
 1219 above 15°C (Fig 2.14) and their observed proliferation fits with Smayda and Reynolds' (2003)
 1220 characterisation of Proco-centroids (Type II) being found nearshore with a relatively accessible
 1221 nutrient supply. They further suggest that the selection of species *within* a given life form (in
 1222 this case - Type II) is stochastic. Their conceptual model focused on dinoflagellates, as they are
 1223 the most common HAB species group, owing to their ability to occupy a wide range of niches
 1224 (Smayda and Reynolds, 2003). However the model does not address the full diversity of HAB
 1225 species.

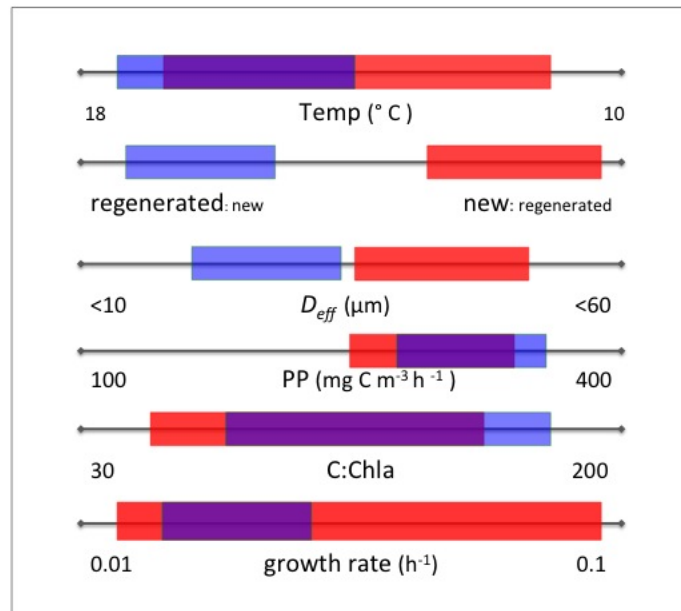


Figure 2.14: Approximate placing of *Myrionecta rubra* (red), *Prorocentrum triestinum* (blue) or both (overlapping) along environmental and biological axes. See Table 2.2.

1226 **Approximated physiology: *M. rubra*** On average, particulate nitrogen and primary produc-
1227 tivity were greater in the samples dominated by *M. rubra* than in those dominated by *Skele-*
1228 *tonema* spp. (Table 2.4). Some of the highest previously recorded primary productivity rates
1229 from planktonic organisms were during *M. rubra* blooms. Packard et al. (1978) reported values
1230 of $1200 \text{ mgC m}^{-3} \text{ h}^{-1}$, and similarly Smith and Barber (1979) observed a maximum rate of par-
1231 ticulate C synthesis of $2187 \text{ (mg C m}^{-3} \text{ h}^{-1})$ at 50% of incident light. Several studies indicate
1232 photosynthetic efficiency of *M. rubra* during blooms (in the form of P/I curves) is comparable
1233 to that of diatoms (Stoecker et al., 1989; Platt et al., 1980). Although, at times, *Skeletonema*
1234 spp. cells were as numerous as *M. rubra*, based on their cell size (8-12 μm) and volume:carbon
1235 ratios (Verity et al., 1992; Menden-Deuer and Lessard, 2000), they did not contribute as much,
1236 in terms of biomass, to the total assemblage as *M. rubra*. The data in this study suggest that *M.*
1237 *rubra* rates of primary productivity were higher than those observed during high *Skeletonema*
1238 spp. cell densities (Table 2.4). Reported values may even represent an underestimation of pro-
1239 ductivity rates as *M. rubra* are known to be sensitive to confinement and rapid nutrient exhaus-
1240 tion, and their cells frequently rupture during sampling, potentially biasing measured values.

1241 The approximated carbon-based growth rates are comparable to values measured by Her-
1242 fort et al. (2011) in the Colombia River estuary, which ranged between $0.7 - 1.4 \text{ (d}^{-1})$. The
1243 values are seemingly high when compared to those recorded *in situ* by Crawford et al. (1997)
1244 or in culture by Yih et al. (2004), but maximum values have been recorded up to 3.5 d^{-1} in
1245 culture studies of ciliates (Strom and Morello, 1998). The steady increase in *Skeletonema* spp.
1246 numbers and high growth rates indicate active growth of the diatom in the presence of *M. rubra*.

1247 The C_p :Chl-*a* ratios given in Table 2.4 represent an upper limit estimate of phytoplankton
1248 carbon for a given Chl-*a* concentration. These values are well within the inverse of the values
1249 published by Behrenfeld et al. (2009) in their approximations of Chl-*a*:C from satellite Chl-*a* and
1250 backscattering determinations. Changes in the cellular C_p :Chl-*a* are associated with community
1251 composition and acclimation to light and nutrient regimes (Sathyendranath et al., 2009) and the
1252 approximations presented here are based on carbon values that were converted assuming a
1253 Redfield N:C ratio of 1:6.625 molar. Although C:N:P ratios are observed consistently at a global

1254 scale (Redfield, 1958), deviations from this ratio have been observed at several temporal scales
 1255 and between different phytoplankton communities. Assuming a constant Redfield ratio, will no
 1256 doubt introduce some error into the C_p :Chl values presented in this study.

1257 **Approximated physiology: *P. triestinum*** *Prorocentrum triestinum* displayed exceptionally
 1258 high biomass (max. $146 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) and high rates of primary productivity ($339 \text{ mg m}^{-3} \text{ h}^{-1}$),
 1259 and it appears that urea was the main source of nitrogen during their proliferation. Active growth
 1260 is suggested during *P. triestinum* proliferation as growth rates were on average higher when they
 1261 dominated than when not.

Table 2.4: Temperature (T), particulate nitrogen (PN) and primary productivity (PP) values and standard error in samples dominated by the species of interest. For approximated phytoplankton C_p :Chl-*a* ratios, PN was converted to PC, using the Redfield ratio (10C:1N). 30% of the total C:Chl-*a* was considered as C_p :Chl-*a* (Behrenfeld et al., 2005). Carbon-based growth rates were approximated assuming $\mu \text{ (h}^{-1}\text{)} = \text{PP (mg m}^{-3} \text{ h}^{-1}\text{)}/\text{PC (mg m}^{-3}\text{)}$. Growth rates are scaled from per hour to per day (Brown et al., 1991) for comparisons with other studies.

Dominance	T (°C)	PN ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$)	PP ($\text{mg C m}^{-3} \text{ h}^{-1}$)	Approx. C_p :Chl- <i>a</i>	Approx. growth rate (d^{-1})
<i>M. rubra</i> (~45%, ~7 X10 ⁶ cells L ⁻¹) n= 5	10.3 - 16.2	40.9 ±14.7	138.7±42.9	49.4 ±18.71	0.33 ±0.09
<i>Skeletonema</i> spp. (~49%, ~12 X10 ⁵ cells L ⁻¹) n= 5	10.2 - 11.6	12.7±3	75.2±19	32.5±3.8	0.49±0.07
<i>P. triestinum</i> (~75%, ~13 X10 ⁷ cells L ⁻¹) n= 7	13.1-17.7	88.4±17	182.8±29.4	35.4±6.0	0.20±0.03
mixed (n= 14)	10.1-16.9	42.6±4.3	81.2±15.3	55.0±3.8	0.16±0.03

1262 Nitrogen resource partitioning

1263 With regard to the harmful species, *M. rubra* and *P. triestinum*, both displayed higher rates of
 1264 urea uptake than NH_4^+ . This supports results found by Anderson et al. (2002), Li et al. (2010)
 1265 and Solomon et al. (2010) that urea is an important source of nitrogen for species associated
 1266 with HAB events. During high cell densities of *P. triestinum*, ρ_{urea} was higher than $\rho_{\text{NH}_4^+}$, with
 1267 substrate urea concentrations exceeding those of NH_4^+ uptake (Fig. 2.9). Culture experiments

1268 show that, on a per cell basis, dinoflagellates have significantly higher urease activity (and thus
1269 urea uptake rates) than diatoms, cyanobacteria, or pelagophytes (see Solomon et al., 2010).
1270 Also, in the field, rates of urease activity typically peak in summer months, and are considered
1271 to be a reflection of not just direct and indirect effects of temperature, but also community
1272 composition and urea concentrations. Li et al. (2010) found that urea was the preferred organic
1273 N source during a *Karenia mikimotoi* (harmful dinoflagellate) bloom in the East China Sea. Their
1274 measured half saturation constants for NH_4^+ uptake were substantially higher ($2.15 \mu\text{molN}$) than
1275 those for urea ($1.35 \mu\text{molN}$), indicating that lower concentrations of urea than ammonium can
1276 be used for growth, i.e. high affinity shows a greater ability to take up nutrients at low ambient
1277 concentrations. Moreover, culture experiments on *Pseudo-nitzschia*, a HAB-forming diatom,
1278 showed that it produces more domoic acid when grown on urea than on NO_3^- or NH_4^+ (Howard
1279 et al., 2007).

1280 Diatoms were observed to take up total N and NO_3^- at faster rates than any other phyto-
1281 plankton group, as has been observed in other studies (Dortch et al., 1984; Lomas and Glibert,
1282 2000). Interestingly, the GLM did not predict the uptake rates of NO_3^- by diatoms particularly
1283 well, as evidenced by their uniformly predicted values in Fig. 2.10. The GLM best predicts the
1284 uptake rates as a function of ambient nutrient concentration, cell size and taxon. With regard
1285 to ambient concentrations, typically high NO_3^- concentrations are associated with high f -ratios
1286 (Eppley and Peterson, 1979) and large-celled communities (e.g. Malone, 1980b; Probyn, 1985;
1287 Harrison, 1990), and usually dominated by diatoms (Margalef, 1979; Dortch et al., 1984). How-
1288 ever, several studies have found weak correlations between uptake rates and availability of NO_3^-
1289 (Furnas, 1983; Glibert and Garside, 1992; Dauchez et al., 1996) due to variable precondition-
1290 ing conditions and physiological state (i.e. nutrient starved/replete). Diatoms are known to have
1291 large internal stores of NO_3^- (e.g. Dortch et al., 1984; Lomas and Glibert, 1999) and can thus
1292 regulate their uptake according to how much is needed. Reasons for this are hypothesised to
1293 be for mechanistic energy balances in the cell during transient conditions of temperature and
1294 light. NO_3^- uptake in excess of nutritional requirements and the subsequent internal storage
1295 are further hypothesised to be a strategy of dissipating the electron flow during photosynthesis

1296 (Lomas and Glibert, 1999; Glibert et al., 2016). Another circumstance observed in upwelling
1297 systems is that measured substrate concentrations at the time of uptake measurement may not
1298 reflect the available substrate nutrient concentrations. This is the “shift up phase” mentioned
1299 Dugdale et al. (1990) and previously noted in Schaecter (1968). Phytoplankton take time to
1300 respond to new inputs of nutrients and so a lag exists and maximum attainable uptake rates
1301 increase as the body of water moves away from the upwelling centre (Wilkerson and Dugdale,
1302 1987). The measured rates in this study could reflect such a circumstance and, in the case
1303 of diatoms, uptake rates are not constrained solely by ambient concentration and community
1304 structure. Accounting for silica limitation in the GLM might have improved the estimates of up-
1305 take rates as silica is an essential component of diatom physiology and is thus a key factor in the
1306 regulation of diatom growth (Paasche, 1980). In this study, silica was not measured in 2004, but
1307 in 2005 N:Si ratios were all below 2:1 (unpublished data). Gilpin et al. (2004) considered >4:1
1308 Si limited, and <2:1 N limited. An earlier study in the Cape Peninsula by Brown and Hutchings
1309 (1987) reported ratios within the same range (1 - 2.2). The authors concluded that silicate may
1310 *sometimes* limit the growth of diatoms in the system studied, but NO_3^- was the limiting nutrient
1311 in their observations.

1312 Further suggestion for the poor GLM estimates of NO_3^- uptake, is the potential bias that could
1313 have been incurred by defining community structure, both in terms of D_{eff} and the dominant
1314 taxon. The different algal species were considered dominant with >40% contribution to total
1315 cells L^{-1} , except in the case of *M. rubra*, which was >30%. The rates expressed in this study
1316 are representative of the entire assemblage. Although particular emphasis has been placed
1317 upon teasing out the signals from each of the dominant groups in the blooms, these can only
1318 be considered as approximates.

1319 **Effective diameter as a size proxy**

1320 The generally observed trends in the literature are that NO_3^- is taken up by large cells, and
1321 regenerated nitrogen is taken up by small cells (Probyn, 1985; Acevedo-Trejos et al., 2013).
1322 Qualitatively, this is observed in the data set within the micro-plankton size range measured

1323 (2-60 μm), and the relationships between D_{eff} and the mass specific uptake of NH_4^+ ($r=-0.54$,
1324 $p=0.0008$) and urea ($r=-0.59$, $p=0.0002$) are significant. This is considered a reflection of the
1325 physiological efficiencies of small cells compared to large cells, where small cells have greater
1326 affinity and faster uptake rates per unit biomass than large cells (Aksnes and Egge, 1991;
1327 Edwards et al., 2012), owing to their smaller surface area:volume ratios (Raven, 1997). The
1328 significant size/uptake relationships for regenerated forms of nitrogen in this study suggest that
1329 effective diameter can represent the assemblage scale properties of regenerated nitrogen dy-
1330 namics. The situation for NO_3^- , however, seems more complicated. As seen in the results from
1331 the GLM, NO_3^- uptake was not predicted with the additive effects of ambient concentration, cell
1332 size and taxon. A strong linear relationship exists between mass specific uptake rate and am-
1333 bient NO_3^- concentration ($r=0.67$, $p=0.0001$), suggesting that, overall, ambient concentrations
1334 may play a first order influence on NO_3^- uptake. This is unsurprising, given the large range in
1335 ambient concentrations ($0.02\text{-}24 \mu\text{molN L}^{-1}$). Although clear patterns are observed between
1336 cell size and NO_3^- availability in several studies (Kostadinov et al., 2010; Acevedo-Trejos et al.,
1337 2013), the size/ NO_3^- uptake relationship can be highly variable (Probyn, 1985; Dauchez et al.,
1338 1996). The relationships can be attributed to physiological acclimation to rapidly shifting condi-
1339 tions (Bonachela et al., 2011; Smith et al., 2009) and taxonomic influences (Platt, 1985). This
1340 seems to be the case in this study. Despite the significant positive correlation between f -ratio
1341 and D_{eff} ($r=0.46$, $p=0.008$), the highest NO_3^- uptake rates were not measured in samples with
1342 the largest D_{eff} (Fig. 2.12a). Diatoms appeared to take up NO_3^- at a faster rate than any
1343 other group observed (Fig. 2.11b) and, when removed from the regression analysis, the r value
1344 improved but was still not significant. High NO_3^- uptake values were also found in samples con-
1345 taining a mixotrophic dinoflagellate *Ceratium furca*. This is the one circumstance where D_{eff}
1346 failed to represent the size fraction with the greatest contribution to total biomass. The effective
1347 diameter was underestimated due to bimodal distributions that occurred in samples where *P.*
1348 *triestinum* and *C. furca* were both high in numbers, peaking at different parts of the size spec-
1349 trum. As *P. triestinum* numbers declined, *C. furca* numbers increased. This was evident in
1350 four samples during 2005. After removing such samples, the correlation between $v\text{NO}_3^-$ and

1351 D_{eff} became significant ($r=0.39$, $p=0.04$). It is likely that D_{eff} represented the bulk dynamics
1352 of NO_3^- 90% of the time ($n=30$) and that inherent taxonomic adaptations in NO_3^- assimilation,
1353 by most notably diatoms, was an important influencing factor. Complications of quantifying
1354 community structure by bulk metrics were also highlighted by Acevedo-Trejos et al. (2015).
1355 Their trait based model assessed the mechanisms and trade-offs shaping the size structure of
1356 phytoplankton communities, and described their assemblages using total biomass, mean size
1357 and size variance (as a measure of functional diversity). They explicitly assume unimodality in
1358 the size structure of the emergent phytoplankton communities, as accounting for multi-modality
1359 would require more parameters and add to model complexity.

1360 **Conclusions**

1361 The nutrient utilisation strategies of two separate, high biomass blooms, respectively dominated
1362 by *Myrionecta rubra* and *Prorocentrum triestinum*, were explored. In both case studies, the shift
1363 in local wind patterns from relaxed, light northerly to southerly winds with increasing wind stress
1364 had a strong influence on the thermal and physical dynamics of the water column.

1365 *Myrionecta rubra* were present throughout the downwelling/upwelling cycle, were spatially
1366 heterogeneous across a range of temperatures from 11-17°C, and occurred in high biomass
1367 ($104 \mu\text{molN L}^{-1}$) and high Chl-*a* concentrations (150 mg m^3). NO_3^- and urea were important
1368 nitrogen sources during their proliferation and calculated f ratios were high. *Myrionecta rubra*
1369 dominance was observed in association with a diatom *Skeletonema* spp.

1370 *Prorocentrum triestinum* dominated after a prolonged period of strongly stratified water, with
1371 temperatures between 11-16°C. They displayed an ability to utilise NO_3^- (f ratios from 0.1-0.6)
1372 but it is suggested that urea, which was in elevated concentrations, was an important N source.
1373 Urea uptake rates were high during their proliferation, and their apparent capacity to utilise this N
1374 resource could have contributed to their proliferation and dominance over other phytoplankton
1375 species. Growth rates were, on average, higher when they dominated. Exceptionally high
1376 primary productivity ($339.8 \text{ mg C m}^{-3} \text{ h}^{-1}$) was observed during *P. triestinum* proliferation.

1377 The data were used to assess whether the single size descriptor, effective diameter, could

1378 adequately represent the aggregate physiological properties of the assemblages. This is im-
1379 portant for two main reasons. Firstly for the meaningful interpretation of data products that can
1380 be derived from the ocean color EAP algorithm designed for the southern Benguela, and sec-
1381 ondly to inform allometric dependencies of different phytoplankton communities. A significant,
1382 negative correlation between NH_4^+ and D_{eff} (slope=-1.2, $p<0.05$) and urea uptake rates and
1383 D_{eff} (slope=-1.8, $p<0.05$) was evident, reflecting the physiological efficiencies of small versus
1384 large cells. All cells require NH_4^+ , and per unit biomass small cells take up nutrients at a faster
1385 rate. This was captured in the data when using the bulk metric to describe the aggregated
1386 size properties of the assemblage; D_{eff} is an adequate representation of the assemblage size
1387 distribution. The non-significant relationship between NO_3^- uptake and D_{eff} represents several
1388 important factors that are known to cause marked deviations from the generally observed al-
1389 lometric relationships for NO_3^- uptake. Most notably, taxonomic variations and adaptations to
1390 fluctuating NO_3^- availability, characteristic of upwelling systems, influence NO_3^- uptake rates.
1391 The presence of diatoms as well as occasional bi-modality in size distributions restricted the
1392 usefulness of D_{eff} in estimating NO_3^- dynamics in this data set. However, the significant posi-
1393 tive relationship between f -ratios D_{eff} implies that, in general terms, D_{eff} can capture the bulk
1394 nitrogen signals of natural assemblages.

1395 **Chapter 3**

1396 **An investigation into the use of effective** 1397 **diameter to represent the nitrogen** 1398 **dynamics in diatom-dominated** 1399 **assemblages: The case of Saldanha Bay,** 1400 **South Africa**

1401 **Abstract**

1402 The effective diameter (D_{eff}) is a single value proxy representation of phytoplankton size distri-
1403 butions that has been shown to represent the bio-optical properties of natural assemblages in
1404 the southern Benguela. The previous chapter shows that D_{eff} can also represent the dynamics
1405 of regenerated nitrogen in natural assemblages of phytoplankton, but not NO_3^- . This chapter
1406 explores further the use of D_{eff} to represent the nitrogen dynamics observed in Saldanha Bay,
1407 South Africa between January 2012 and January 2013. Assessments were also made of the ni-
1408 trogen uptake rates in relation to environmental forcing and community structure, and comprise
1409 the first measurements of nitrogen uptake in the bay. Summer waters in the bay were nutrient-

1410 limited at the surface and light-limited at depth, with low depth-integrated f -ratios (min: 0.04).
1411 Winter months were characterised by high nutrient availability throughout the water column, low
1412 biomass and highest depth-integrated f -ratios (max: 0.56). Diatoms were dominant throughout
1413 the seasonal cycle, with highest biomass and large cell sizes (up to 60 μm) observed in sum-
1414 mer, and lowest biomass and small cell sizes observed in winter ($<20 \mu\text{m}$). Ambient nitrogen
1415 concentrations were the driver in the observed variability in the absolute uptake of all nitrogen
1416 sources. In the diatom-dominated community, V_{max} values for NO_3^- and NH_4^+ range between
1417 0.007-0.17 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}\text{h}^{-1}$ and 0.025-2.76 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}\text{h}^{-1}$ respectively. Variation is observed in
1418 estimates of K_s for NO_3^- (0.23-42.57 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) and NH_4^+ (0.18-14.02 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$). Michaelis-
1419 Menten models did not describe the kinetics of urea uptake. The effective diameter could not
1420 represent the dynamics of nitrogen uptake in low biomass, diatom-dominated assemblages in
1421 Saldanha Bay.

1422 Introduction

1423 Diatoms (Bacillariophyta) are key players in the ocean carbon, nitrogen and silicon cycles, con-
1424 stituting the most abundant, diversified, and ecologically important group in the marine envi-
1425 ronment (Sarhou et al., 2005). They occupy the entire nine orders of magnitude of the range
1426 in phytoplankton cell volume (Litchman and Klausmeier, 2008). Diatoms contribute a large
1427 component to marine biomass, particularly in nutrient-rich coastal systems, and account for
1428 25-40% of total primary productivity in the global ocean (Smetacek, 1999), exceeding the con-
1429 tribution of all terrestrial rain forests combined (Field et al., 1998). Diatom dominance tends
1430 to occur whenever conditions are optimal for growth (Kudela, 2009), contributing disproportion-
1431 ately to biomass in spring blooms and coastal upwelling events, as diatoms are particularly well
1432 adapted to conditions that favour large cells (Chisholm, 1992). Their proliferation requires that
1433 silicic acid and other major nutrients are non-limiting (Egge and Aksnes, 1992) but diatoms have
1434 also been observed to be well adapted to areas of low nutrient input (Leynaert et al., 2001) by
1435 reducing cell volumes and increasing their surface area to volume ratios (Kiørboe, 2008). As a

1436 group, diatoms are considered NO_3^- specialists (Glibert et al., 2016), suggested to be a result
1437 of their higher nitrate reductase activity (Lomas and Glibert, 2000), which is necessary for the
1438 assimilation of NO_3^- into the cell.

1439 **Diverse nitrogen utilisation strategies**

1440 Many models explicitly represent diatoms as a single group (e.g. Bopp et al., 2005; Le Quéré
1441 et al., 2005) and use average parameters (e.g. for growth, nutrient uptake, mortality etc) to rep-
1442 resent the taxonomic and functional diversity of the entire group. Several reviews have found
1443 a wide range of half saturation constants for N (Sarhou et al., 2005; Collos et al., 2005), with
1444 strong genus-specific responses to high NO_3^- levels (Collos et al., 1997), indicating diversity
1445 in nutrient utilisation strategies under varying environmental conditions. Sartouh et al. (2005)
1446 reported values between 0.02 μM to 10.2 μM , with an average value of $1.6 \pm 1.9 \mu\text{M}$ ($n =$
1447 35). Collos et al. (2005) reported K_s values between 0.4 and 53 $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$ and argue that
1448 K_s appears to covary with ambient nitrate concentrations rather than within a given taxonomic
1449 group. Positive relationships between NO_3^- concentrations and K_s have been reported (Harris-
1450 son et al., 1996; Smith et al., 2009) with much of the variability in K_s in those studies explained
1451 by nutrient prehistory. Interspecific competition for nutrients and cell surface area (Collos et al.,
1452 1997), temperature (Lomas and Glibert, 1999) or cellular acclimation in response to internal
1453 and ambient nutrient concentrations (Smith et al., 2009), are all factors that could affect uptake
1454 kinetic parameters. With regard to the effect of size, Maguer et al. (2011) found the influence
1455 of cell size was greater for NO_3^- than NH_4^+ , where V_{max} was consistently higher in cells larger
1456 than 10 μm , potentially reflecting larger specific storage of NO_3^- relative to their biomass. A
1457 review by Litchman et al. (2007) found that diatoms as a group displayed higher NO_3^- uptake
1458 rates for a given cell size than other functional groups such coccolithophores, dinoflagellates or
1459 chlorophytes. Within diatoms, they found a strong relationship between K_s and cell size.

1460 **The effects of cell size**

1461 The general patterns in size distribution, and the inherent limits size imposes on metabolism,
1462 is consistent within diatoms as a group. Large diatoms tend to dominate plankton communities
1463 under high-nutrient conditions owing to their low surface area-volume ratios (Raven, 1980) and
1464 subsequent requirement for high nutrient concentrations. On the other hand, small diatoms are
1465 adapted to low nutrient concentrations, as seen in smaller half saturation constants than those
1466 of larger cells (Eppley et al., 1969; Edwards et al., 2012). Terseleer et al. (2014) used a size
1467 based approach to model the functional diversity within diatoms and characterised diatom size
1468 succession as a trade off associated with cell size along a bottom-up (resource acquisition)
1469 and top-down (grazing pressure) gradient (Steiner, 2003). Small cells are better competitors at
1470 nutrient acquisition but are more susceptible to grazing, whereas large cells can proliferate due
1471 to slower rates of predator growth in response to blooms (Irigoien et al., 2005). Terseleer et
1472 al. (2014) argued that the diverse strategies of nutrient uptake and growth within diatoms as a
1473 group could be resolved using size succession. Barton et al. (2013) assessed intra-group ecol-
1474 ogy of diatom and dinoflagellate taxa and found greater variation in the mean cell volumes over
1475 the seasonal cycle for diatoms than for dinoflagellates. This was attributed to the mixotrophic
1476 strategies employed by dinoflagellates for the same cell size, which were less constrained by
1477 ambient nutrient concentrations.

1478 This chapter takes advantage of a predominantly diatom-dominated data set collected in
1479 Saldanha Bay, in the southern Benguela, over the period of a year. In the previous chapter
1480 it was found that D_{eff} could represent the regenerated nitrogen dynamics of high biomass
1481 blooms. The case for NO_3^- was confounded by several data points that were diatom dominated,
1482 as well as a few samples displaying bi-modality in size distribution. It was suggested that
1483 the physiological NO_3^- utilisation strategies of diatoms were more important than allometric
1484 considerations in determining the uptake rates of NO_3^- . This current chapter explores this tenet
1485 further, as such an assessment could help interpretation of allometric deviations within diatoms
1486 as a group.

1487 This chapter aims to describe the utilisation of the different nitrogen sources in relation to

1488 community structure and seasonally varying environmental gradients and is the first description
1489 of its kind in Saldanha Bay. Uptake kinetic experiments are used in addition to *in situ* incuba-
1490 tions to infer the nitrogen capabilities of the particular diatom communities present. The size
1491 distribution and nitrogen utilisation are then used to assess how well the effective diameter can
1492 represent the physiological properties of natural, diatom-dominated assemblages.

1493 **Methods**

1494 **Sampling**

1495 Sampling was carried out in Saldanha Bay during seven periods between January 2012 and
1496 January 2013. Each sampling period consisted of three days of experimentation, with the ex-
1497 ception of January 2013 when six days were sampled. Data presented in this study were
1498 collected from a fixed station in Big Bay (33°01.748' S, 18°00.888' E), in close proximity to an
1499 oyster farm (Fig. 3.1). Vertical temperature and fluorescence profiles were obtained with a
1500 Sea-Bird Electronics Seacat CTD profiler for each sampling day. Depths of 0, 3, 6 and 9 m
1501 were sampled as a representation of the water column, which in entirety is 12 m deep. Water
1502 from each depth was collected using two casts of a 5 L Niskin water sampler and used to fill
1503 10 L black buckets. Water from the buckets was used to measure nitrogen uptake in *in situ*
1504 incubations, which were prepared on board and deployed from the vessel. Two out of the three
1505 days per sampling period were dedicated to *in situ* incubations with the remaining day being
1506 used to conduct uptake kinetic experiments on shore. Protocols for *in situ* incubations and up-
1507 take kinetic experiments are detailed below. Each bucket was brought back to the laboratory
1508 for nutrient analysis, Coulter Counter measurements, and Chl-*a* analysis.

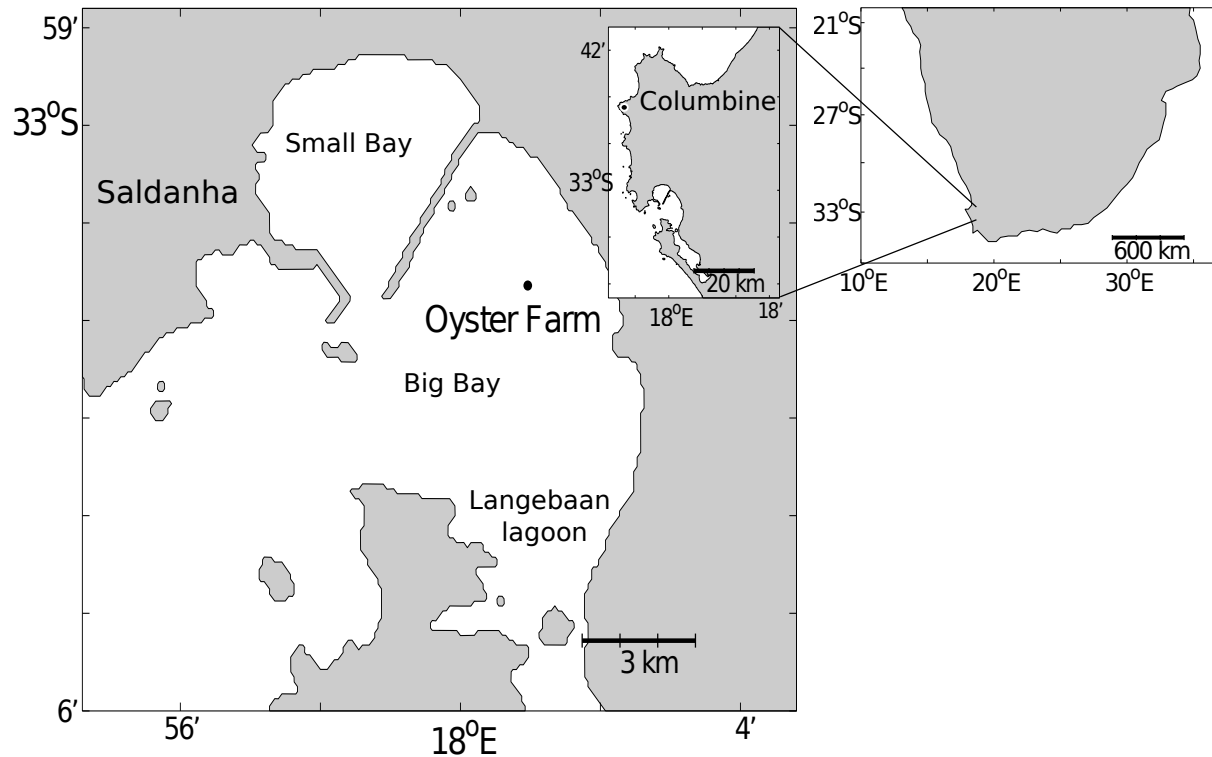


Figure 3.1: Map of sample site in Saldanha Bay on the west coast of South Africa. (●) indicates sample site in close proximity to the oyster farm in Big Bay.

1509 **Wind data**

1510 Hourly averages of wind speed and direction were obtained from Cape Columbine weather
1511 station of the South African Weather Service, located approximately 30 km north-west of the
1512 Big Bay sampling station. Refer to Chapter 2 for details of processing.

1513 **Particle size distributions**

1514 A Beckman Coulter Multisizer IV was used to measure particle size distributions between 7-70
1515 μm and were presented here using means and standard deviations from all sample depths (0,
1516 3, 6 and 9 m) . Effective diameters (D_{eff}) were calculated as in Chapter 2 (eq. 2.2).

1517 ***In situ* incubations**

1518 Uptake of NO_3^- , NH_4^+ and urea were measured over a 24 hour period in *in situ* incubations. The
1519 protocol for uptake incubations follows that already detailed in Chapter 2, with the exception that
1520 the 1 L polycarbonate bottles (NO_3^- , NH_4^+ and urea) were incubated *in situ* at their respective
1521 depths (0, 3, 6, and 9 m) for a period of 24 hrs on a custom-made rig. Isotope dilution has not
1522 been taken into account. The 24 hrs incubation time could results in an underestimate of NH_4^+
1523 uptake rates under conditions of active regeneration within the incubation bottle.

1524 **Community structure**

1525 Phytoplankton samples from each depth were collected in two 100 mL bottles and fixed in 2.5%
1526 buffered formalin. Species were counted using inverted microscopy (Utermöhl, 1958). Pie
1527 diagrams were compiled showing relative abundance (cells L^{-1}) and relative particle volume
1528 (μm^3). Cell volumes of only the most dominant species were included. In cases where biovol-
1529 umes were not found in the literature, estimates were calculated from available width and length
1530 data (e.g. <https://www.eoas.ubc.ca>), using appropriate formulae for geometric shapes accord-
1531 ing to Sun and Liu (2003). Certain assumptions were made regarding the geometric shape of
1532 the species present, and thus values in Table 3.1 represent rough estimates of biovolume and
1533 are not considered to be exact, and in some cases may be an overestimate. Species diversity
1534 was calculated via Shannon's diversity index (H').

Table 3.1: Biovolumes of the dominant phytoplankton species, sources and the equations used to calculate biovolume from width (a) and length (b) and height (c) as found in several phytoplankton databases online.

<u>species</u>	<u>biovolume</u> (μm^3)	<u>equation</u>	<u>chain-forming</u>	<u>reference</u>
<u>Diatoms</u>				
<i>Chaetoceros</i> spp.	342		Yes	Olivieri et al. (1984)
<i>Pseudo-nitzschia</i> spp.	1237.5		Yes	Olivieri et al. (1984)
<i>Thalassionema nitzschioides</i> spp.	2250	$Vol = a \cdot b \cdot c$		https://www.eoas.ubc.ca
<i>Thalassiosira</i> spp.	19454.5		Yes	Olivieri et al. (1984)
<i>Skeletonema costatum</i>	13800	$Vol = a \cdot b \cdot c$		https://www.eoas.ubc.ca
<i>Dityllum brightwelli</i>	54125		Yes	https://www.eoas.ubc.ca
<i>Detonula pumila</i>	40644	$Vol = \Pi \cdot b^2 \cdot \left(\left(\frac{b}{4} \right) - \left(\frac{a}{12} \right) \right)$	Yes	Naz et al. (2013)
<u>Dinoflagellates</u>				
<i>Gyrodinium</i> spp.	11000	$Vol = \left(\frac{\Pi}{12} \right) a \cdot b^2$		
<i>Ceratium lineatum</i>	31800	$Vol = \left(\frac{\Pi}{12} \right) a \cdot b^2$		
<i>Ceratium furca</i>	52539	$Vol = \left(\frac{\Pi}{12} \right) a \cdot b^2$		https://www.eoas.ubc.ca
<i>Prorocentrum micans</i>	17638	$Vol = \left(\frac{\Pi}{12} \right) a \cdot b^2$		https://www.eoas.ubc.ca
<i>Prorocentrum triestinum</i>	378	$Vol = \left(\frac{\Pi}{12} \right) a \cdot b^2$		http://species-identification.org/
<i>Peredinium</i> spp.	3512	$Vol = \left(\frac{\Pi}{12} \right) a \cdot b^2$		

1535 Kinetics protocol

1536 Samples for kinetic experiments were collected from 3 m depth and brought back to the labora-
 1537 tory on shore. Eight 250 mL bottles were filled with the collected water for each nutrient: NH_4^+ ,
 1538 NO_3^- , Urea. Each 250 mL bottle for the different nitrogen source was spiked with the same vol-
 1539 ume of 100% ^{15}N solution (0.05 mL) to account for ambient concentrations (putatively 10% final
 1540 enrichment). To obtain a concentration gradient, separate bottles were spiked with an increas-
 1541 ing volume of a 10% ^{15}N stock solution (Table 3.2). All bottles were gently inverted 20 times
 1542 once all inoculations were done, and a 25 mL scintillation vial was filled and filtered immediately
 1543 for determination of initial concentrations of the respective nutrients (S_0). The samples were in-
 1544 cubated for an average of 3.5 hours over midday, screened with 50% neutral density film, with
 1545 periodic rotation of the bottles to allow for mixing. The temperature was maintained at ambient
 1546 seawater by water flow through a chiller unit. The incubation was terminated by filtering each

1547 bottle and the filtrate was collected to carry out nutrient analyses for ambient nutrient concen-
 1548 trations at the end of the experiment. The filter, a 25 mm precombusted GF/F filter, was rinsed
 1549 with artificial seawater and Milli-Q, dried at 60 °C and used for mass spectrometry analysis as
 1550 described in Chapter 2.

Table 3.2: Example protocol for either NH_4^+ , NO_3^- or urea, and the volumes for each inoculation of i) 100% and ii) 10% ^{15}N stock solution. Increasing concentration of 10% stock solution were used to obtain a concentration gradient for uptake rates. Time In refers to time bottles were placed in the incubator, Time Out refers to its termination via filtration (S_t).

N	100% Solution.	10% solution	Nominal concentration	Time In	Time Out
	(mL)	(mL)	($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$)	(h)	(h)
1	0.05	0.0	0.2	11:00	14:15
2	0.05	0.1	0.6	11:00	14:15
3	0.05	0.2	1	11:00	14:15
4	0.05	0.25	1.2	11:00	14:15
5	0.05	0.5	2.2	11:00	14:15
6	0.05	1.25	5.2	11:00	14:15
7	0.05	2.5	10.2	11:00	14:15
8	0.05	5	20.2	11:00	14:15

1551 The 10% ^{15}N spiking solution was made up as follows:

1552 2 mL of 100% ^{15}N ($\sim 0.1 \mu\text{mol}/0.1 \text{ mL}$) = $2 \mu\text{mol } ^{15}\text{N}$

1553 2 mL of std stock ($10 \mu\text{mol}/1 \text{ mL}$) = $20 \mu\text{mol } ^{14}\text{N}$

1554 18 mL milli Q = $22 \mu\text{mol}/22 \text{ mL}$

1555 $\approx 1 \mu\text{mol}/\text{mL}$ (depending on ^{15}N concentration)

1556 Actual concentrations of the 100% ^{15}N spike solution were measured spectrophotometrically
 1557 and incorporated into calculations. Presented nutrient concentrations are an exponential aver-
 1558 age (S), which assumes that the decrease in concentration from start of incubation (S_0) to end
 1559 of incubation (S_t) is not linear over time (3.1).

$$S = \frac{S_0}{\ln(S_0/S_t)} * (1 - (S_t/S_0)) \quad (3.1)$$

1560 **Uptake kinetic parameters**

1561 The uptake kinetic parameters V_{max} ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$) and K_s ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) were estimated
1562 via the Michaelis-Menten hyperbola function, using a least squares curve fit to the measured
1563 nutrient concentration ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$):

$$V = \frac{V_{max} * S}{K_s + S} \quad (3.2)$$

1564 The affinity for each nutrient was calculated using Healey (1980):

$$\alpha = \frac{V_{max}}{K_s} \quad (3.3)$$

1565 **Data analysis**

1566 Patterns in community composition per sample were analysed using Multi Dimensional Scaling
1567 plots and a cluster analysis at 70% similarity between samples, per sample month and depth.
1568 Cell counts (cells L^{-1}) were standardised to total values and square root transformed.

1569 The influence of different explanatory variables (ambient concentrations of NO_3^- , NH_4^+ or
1570 urea) on the uptake rates was explored using several general linear models (GLM), assuming a
1571 Gaussian error distribution.

$$v_{nitrogen} (h^{-1}) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 + \beta_n + \epsilon \quad (3.4)$$

1572 where β_0 is the intercept, β_1 is the coefficient for the different nitrogen sources (total N,
1573 NO_3^- , NH_4^+ or urea), β_n is the coefficient for whichever variable(s) predicted the uptake of each
1574 nitrogen species best and ϵ represents the residual error. Changes in the Akaike information
1575 criterion (AIC) values were considered significant with a difference of 2, which was used to
1576 assess the significance of adding variables to the model.

1577 **Results**

1578 A summary of depth-integrated N concentrations and uptake rates is provided in Table 3.3.

Table 3.3: Depth-integrated (0-9 m) nitrogen concentrations (NH_4^+ , NO_3^- , urea), total nitrogen uptake rates, *f*-ratios ($\text{NO}_3^-/[\text{NO}_3^-+\text{NH}_4^++\text{urea}]$) and particulate organic nitrogen (PON). Presented values are an approximation of the integral of each variable, estimated via a trapezoidal function.

	<u>Date</u>	<u>NH_4^+</u>	<u>NO_3^-</u>	<u>urea</u>	<u><i>f</i>-ratio</u>	<u>PON</u>	<u>Chl-<i>a</i></u>	<u>Uptake</u>
		(mmol N m ⁻²)	(mmol N m ⁻²)	(mmol N m ⁻²)		(mmol N m ⁻²)	mg m ³	(mmol N m ⁻² d ⁻¹)
SB1	17/01/2012	4.5	3.4	21.1	0.12	76.3	8.78	13.4
SB1	19/01/2012	1.5	0.4	15.4	0.09	80.3	12.54	9.5
SB2	13/03/2012	2.8	29.6	17.3	0.21	97.1	81.32	7.5
SB2	15/03/2012	0.7	10.5	3.6	0.27	74.4	82.26	5.5
SB3	15/05/2012	2.9	0.6	15.2	0.21	137.4	100.55	11.9
SB3	17/05/2012	5.4	10.3	5.1	0.22	143.3	68.76	9.1
SB4	02/07/2012	4.8	104.8	13.2	0.44	80.3	22.60	10.2
SB4	04/07/2012	11.1	120.5	9.7	0.33	90.6	50.26	13.6
SB5	11/09/2012	1.2	3.9	3.6	0.42	118.1	94.89	4.9
SB5	13/09/2012	3.5	4.5	7.4	0.27	79.7	21.28	7.5
SB6	20/11/2012	1.4	12.9	4.2	0.29	91.2	65.60	7.0
SB6	22/11/2012	2.3	17.5	3.5	0.37	83.2	47.71	6.0
SB7	19/01/2013	4.5	10.4	5.4	0.18	90.7	43.09	7.7
SB7	21/02/2013	2.7	4.0	1.9	0.24	85.4	63.05	7.9
SB7	23/01/2013	7.0	2.8	3.0	0.16	82.4	54.30	8.1

1579 **Water column and community dynamics**

1580 Temperature profiles of the bay showed a clear seasonal pattern (Fig. 3.2b). Strong stratifi-
 1581 cation occurred during summer months (November-May), with surface temperatures reaching
 1582 almost 20 °C. During winter months (May-September), temperatures are homogeneous through-
 1583 out the water column, where minimum temperatures reached 11.9 °C. A subsurface Chl-*a* max-
 1584 imum was observed during summer months (January, March and September) at the thermo-
 1585 cline, which varied between 4-10 m (Fig. 3.2d). Depth-integrated Chl-*a* reached a maximum
 1586 of 100.55 mg m⁻³ in March (late summer), with an average value of 54.47 mg m⁻³ over the
 1587 entire sampling period (Table 3.3). Lowest biomass, as expressed by particulate organic ni-
 1588 trogen (PON), was observed from late summer to spring (March to September) in association

1589 with a mixed water column and highest nutrient availability (Fig. 3.3). During summer months
 1590 when thermal stratification was strong (Fig. 3.2), there were generally higher concentrations of
 1591 all nutrients at depth than at the surface (Fig. 3.3b). Urea concentrations (Fig. 3.3c) were low
 1592 during winter and highest during summer at depth, but remained low in surface waters.

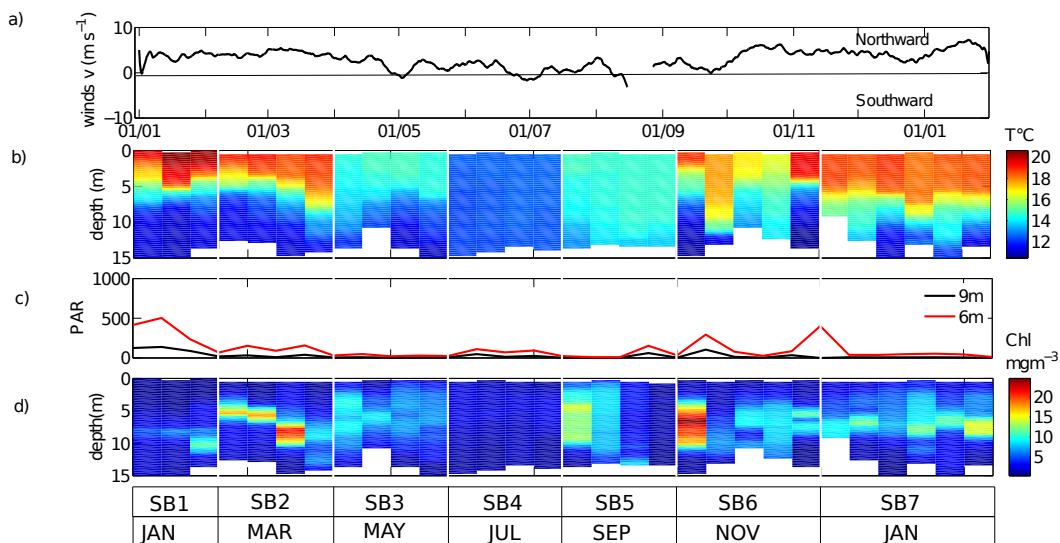


Figure 3.2: Results from Saldanha Bay site showing a) v component of winds as a 1 week running mean from 01 January 2012 to 31 January 2013, b) daily CTD measurements of temperature, c) daily estimates of extracted PAR from 6 m and 9 m and d) Chl-a throughout the water column per sample period. Thin, vertical white lines separate each sample period as this is not a continuous time series.

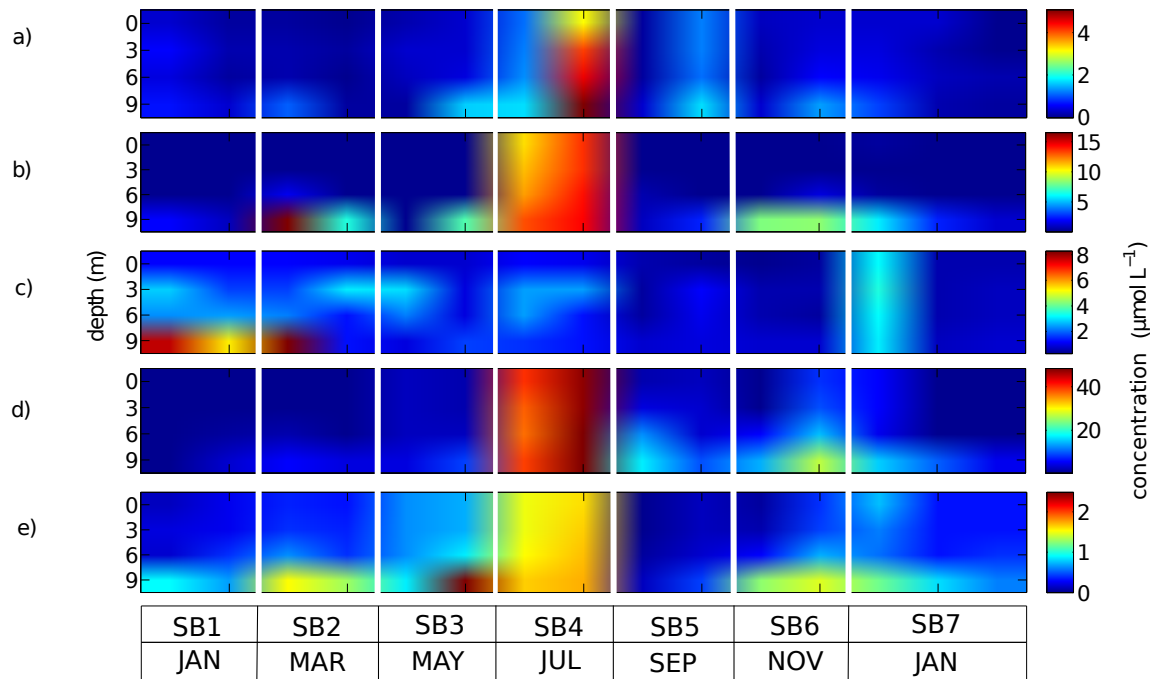


Figure 3.3: Nutrient concentrations at each depth (0, 3, 6 and 9 m) for a) NH_4^+ , b) NO_3^- , c) Urea, d) Si, and e) PO_4^{3-} . Thin, vertical white bands separate each sampling period as this is not a continuous time series. Colourbars represent nutrient concentrations in $\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$.

1593 Community structure was distinctive for each sample month, where clustering at 70% sim-
 1594 ilarity indicated very little overlap in species composition between sample periods (Fig. 3.4a).
 1595 No significant difference in community composition was seen with depth (Fig. 3.4b), indicating
 1596 that species composition was consistent throughout the water column for each sampling pe-
 1597 riod. Particulate nitrogen was highest at depth (6 m and deeper) during summer months and
 1598 more homogeneous throughout the water column during winter, with marginally higher particu-
 1599 late nitrogen at the surface (Fig. 3.5a). Assemblage biomass was maintained by small-celled
 1600 communities (D_{eff} 10.84 μm) during winter (July) (Fig. 3.5c) and large cell sizes (up to 60 μm
 1601 in diameter) at all other times of the year. Species composition was dominated numerically by
 1602 diatoms throughout the year (Fig. 3.6a), with highest species diversity observed in winter, as
 1603 quantified by Shannon's diversity index H' . The estimated biovolumes (Fig. 3.6b) indicate the
 1604 groups that contributed most to the assemblage volume. Although, numerically, *Chaetoceros*
 1605 spp. dominated assemblages, due to their relatively small sizes their contribution to total assem-
 1606 blage volume was surpassed by other diatom species. Assemblages were relatively diverse,

1607 comprising several chain-forming diatom species throughout the year, with *Pseudo-nitzschia*
 1608 spp. contributing most frequently to assemblages during the upwelling season (summer). A
 1609 large-celled dinoflagellate, *Ceratium furca*, contributed most to assemblage volume during May
 1610 but dinoflagellates were not observed to dominate the assemblage during other any sample
 1611 period, although they were present in background numbers in most samples (Fig. 3.6a)

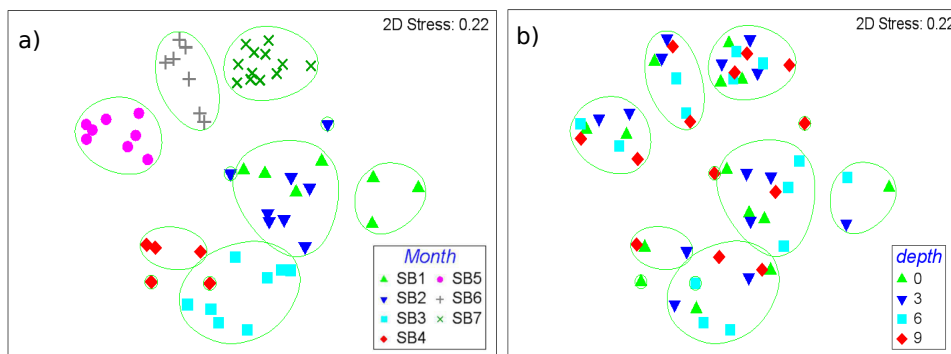


Figure 3.4: Results of Multi Dimensional Scaling plot showing clusters of samples based on species composition by numbers with a) month and b) depth. Green rings indicate 70% similarity between samples.

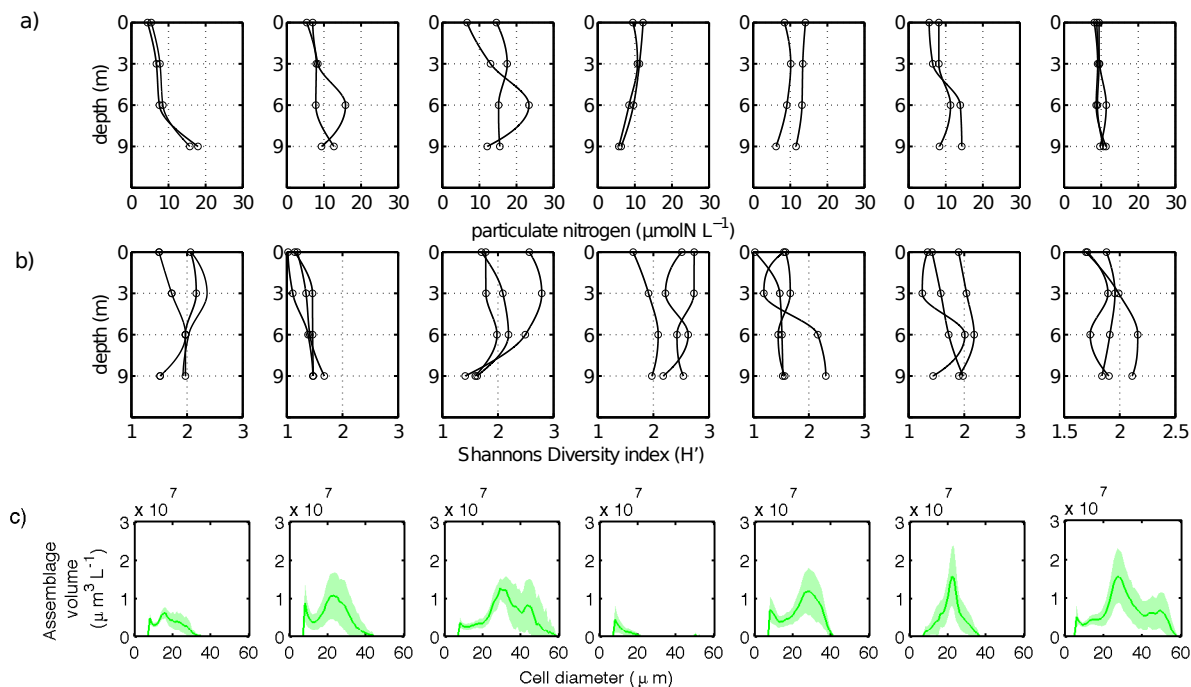


Figure 3.5: Summary of a) depth profiles of particulate nitrogen for each sample, b) Shannon's Diversity index (H') for all sample days and c) particle size distributions of all depths with the green line indicating mean total volume of the assemblage over all depths/samples and shaded area corresponding to standard deviations.

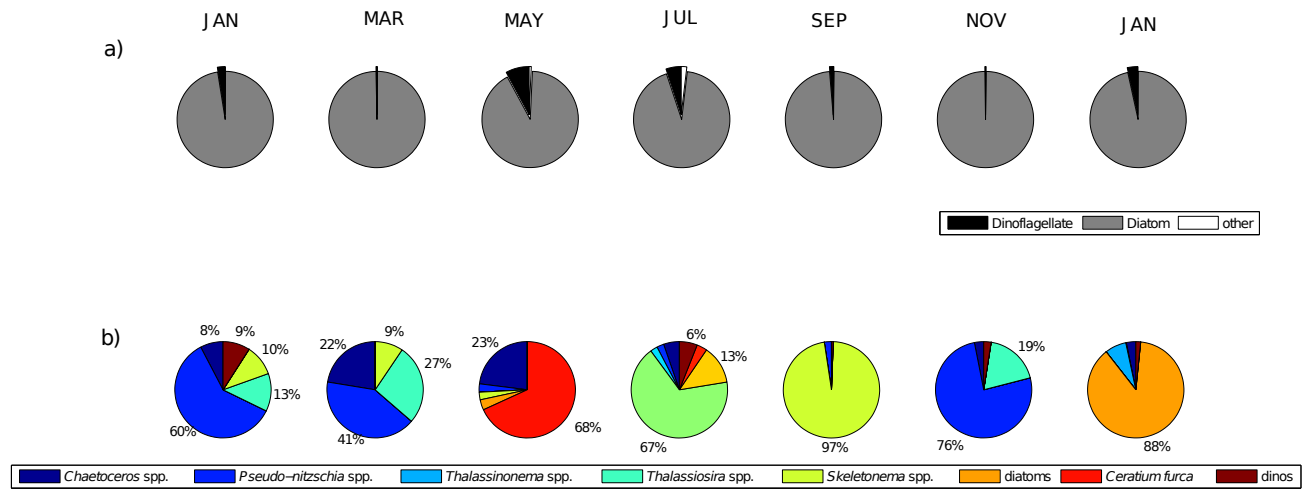


Figure 3.6: Pie diagrams showing community structure per sample period, represented as average values of all sample days per trip. a) relative abundance by numbers (cell L⁻¹) and b) relative biovolume of most contributing genera, excluding species in 'other' category.

1612 Uptake kinetics

1613 Michaelis-Menten (MM) curves were fitted to each kinetic experiment for NH₄⁺ and NO₃⁻ but not
 1614 for urea (Fig. 3.7) as the data did not indicate an increase in uptake rates with saturation at
 1615 increasing urea concentrations. The range of experimental nutrient concentrations was con-
 1616 sistent for each treatment but V_{max} parameters were variable throughout all samples for NO₃⁻
 1617 (0.007 - 0.175 $\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}\text{h}^{-1}$) and NH₄⁺ (0.025 - 2.767 $\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}\text{h}^{-1}$) (Table 3.4). K_s values were
 1618 highly variable for both NO₃⁻ (0.237-42.59 $\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$) and NH₄⁺ (0.185-14.023 $\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$). The
 1619 high K_s observed for NO₃⁻ during SB5 and SB6 indicates that uptake rates had not yet reached
 1620 the asymptote of the Michaelis-Menten curve. Highest affinity for NO₃⁻ was observed in January
 1621 (SB7) and highest affinity for NH₄⁺ in September (SB5) (Table 3.4).

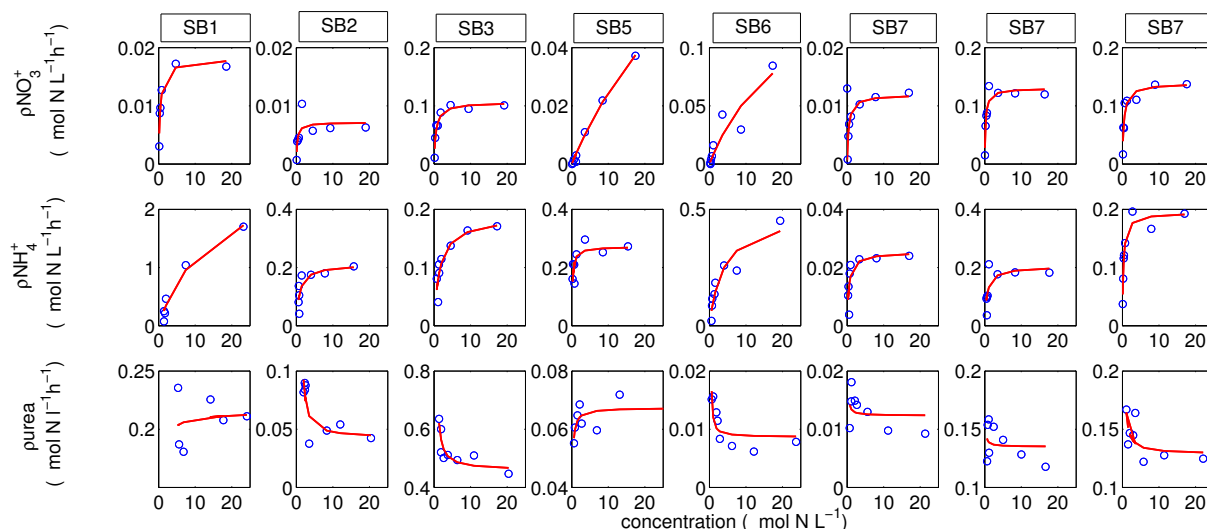


Figure 3.7: Model fits of the Michaelis-Menten equation $V = V_{max} * S / (K_s + S)$ using a non-linear least squares curve fit in Matlab for all kinetic experiments for NH_4^+ , NO_3^- and Urea, from SB1 to SB7. No kinetic experiments were undertaken during SB4 and three were done during SB7. Nutrient concentrations are reported as $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$ and absolute uptake rates as $\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$.

Table 3.4: Summary of particulate nitrogen (PN) ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$), calculated V_{max} ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$), K_s ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$), and nutrient affinity α (*sensu* Healey, 1980).

		PN	$V_{max} \text{NO}_3^-$	$K_s \text{NO}_3^-$	$V_{max} \text{NH}_4^+$	$K_s \text{NH}_4^+$	αNO_3^-	αNH_4^+
SB1	18/01/2012	8.1	0.018	0.424	2.767	14.023	0.043	0.197
SB2	14/03/2012	3.5	0.007	0.251	0.211	0.818	0.028	0.258
SB3	16/05/2012	13.5	0.106	0.510	0.187	1.500	0.208	0.125
SB5	12/09/2012	4.1	0.129	42.579	0.272	0.185	0.003	1.471
SB6	21/11/2012	2.9	0.175	21.593	0.486	3.793	0.008	0.128
SB7	18/01/2013	0.7	0.012	0.409	0.025	0.471	0.029	0.054
SB7	20/01/2013	8.1	0.130	0.237	0.203	0.616	0.548	0.330
SB7	22/01/2013	8.2	0.139	0.408	0.194	0.273	0.340	0.712

1622 Limitations on nitrogen uptake

1623 Mass-specific nitrogen uptake appeared to be limited by ambient nitrogen concentration and,
 1624 in some cases in the deeper samples, by light (Fig. 3.8). Positive linear relationships were ob-
 1625 served between the respective mass-specific uptake rates and ambient nitrogen concentrations
 1626 (NO_3^- : $r=0.69$, $p<0.05$; NH_4^+ : $r = 0.69$, $p<0.005$; urea: 0.44 , $p<0.005$). These relationships were

1627 observed only when samples with PAR values <1% of incident light levels were disregarded in
1628 the regression analyses (Fig. 3.8 a,c). The uptake of both NH_4^+ and urea were also linearly
1629 related to their ambient concentrations and the effects of light limitation were more pronounced
1630 in $v\text{NH}_4^+$ than vurea. The availability of NH_4^+ above concentrations of $1 \mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$ appeared to
1631 have an effect on the uptake of NO_3^- (Fig. 3.8b), an observation also supported by the results
1632 of the GLM (Table 3.5). Ambient concentrations of NO_3^- and NH_4^+ were significant predictors
1633 of $v\text{NO}_3^-$ and were included in the most appropriate model, as assessed by the lowest AIC
1634 number (-517.65), but they predict only 27% of the variability ($r^2 = 0.27$). Additional factors such
1635 as effective diameter, taxon and PAR improved the model's ability to predict $v\text{NO}_3^-$ ($r^2 = 0.38$)
1636 but with little change to the AIC value (-516.23) and the only significant variables were ambi-
1637 ent NO_3^- ($p=0.001$) and NH_4^+ ($p=0.05$) concentrations. The effects of Si appeared to have little
1638 effect on the predictions of $v\text{NO}_3^-$. In the case of $v\text{NH}_4^+$, 62% ($r^2 = 0.62$) of the variability could
1639 be explained by ambient NH_4^+ concentrations ($p=0.001$) and taxon ($p=0.05$), most notably for
1640 *Pseudo-nitzschia* spp. dominated ($p=0.01$) and mixed assemblages ($p=0.05$). Mixed assem-
1641 blages comprised predominantly *Dityllum brightwellii* and *Detonula pumila*. Predictions of vurea
1642 using the GLM were much weaker than the other nitrogen species. Ambient urea concentra-
1643 tions could explain 14% of the variability ($p=0.05$); the effects of taxon, PAR and temperature
1644 were not significant.

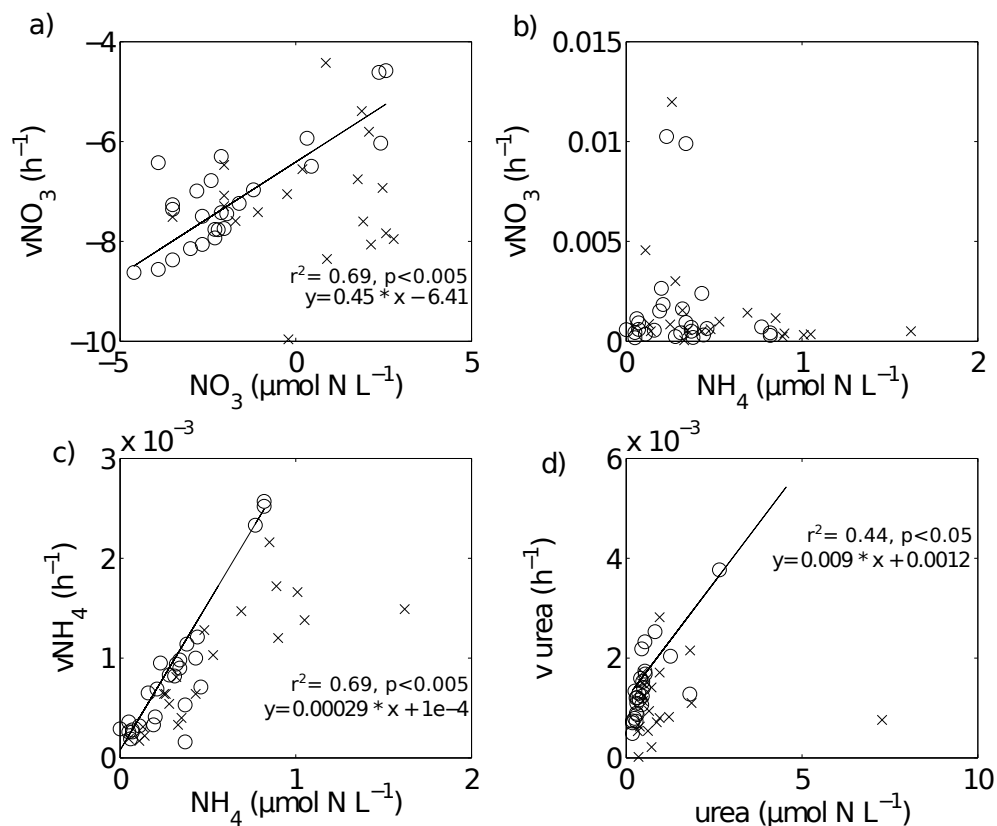


Figure 3.8: Relationships between ambient nutrient concentration and mass-specific uptake rates of a) NO_3^- (expressed as log-log), b) NO_3^- as a function of NH_4^+ c) NH_4^+ and d) urea. Crosses indicate samples that are <1% (~40 kWh) of incident light levels and were not included in the calculations of the regressions and correlation coefficients.

Table 3.5: Summary statistics from GLM to predict mass-specific uptake rates of NO_3^- , NH_4^+ , urea and the significant predictor variables. DF=54

	Parameter	Coefficients	SE	t	p
NO_3^-	$r^2 = 0.27$	AIC= -517.65			
	$v\text{NO}_3^- (h^{-1}) = \beta_0 + \beta_1\text{NO}_3^- + \beta_2\text{NH}_4^+ + \varepsilon$				
$\beta_1\text{NO}_3^-$		3.22e-4	4.41e-4	3.887	<0.005
$\beta_1\text{NH}_4^+$		-2.85e-3	9.97e-4	-2.86	0.01
NH_4^+	$r^2 = 0.62$	AIC= -678.7			
	$v\text{NH}_4^+ (h^{-1}) = \beta_0 + \beta_1\text{NH}_4^+ + \beta_2\text{Group} + \beta_3\text{PAR} + \varepsilon$				
	$\beta_1\text{NH}_4^+$	0.00155	0.00021	6.88	1e-8
	$\beta_2\text{Group: mixed}$	0.008	0.00021	3.83	3e-4
	$\beta_2\text{Group: Pseudo-nitzschia spp.}$	0.005	0.00020	2.80	0.007
Urea	$r^2 = 0.14$	AIC= -587.89			
	$v\text{Urea} (h^{-1}) = \beta_0 + \beta_1\text{urea} + \beta_2\text{Temp} + \varepsilon$				
	$\beta_1\text{urea}$	0.00038	0.00014	2.64	0.009

1645 **Effective diameter as a size proxy**

1646 No significant relationship existed between the mass-specific uptake of the different nitrogen
 1647 species and D_{eff} (Fig. 3.9). However, further investigation revealed significant relationships
 1648 between vNH_4^+ and log values of D_{eff} in the samples characterised by *Pseudo-nitzschia* spp.
 1649 and *Skeletonema* spp. (slope=-2.74, $r^2=0.38$, $p<0.005$). Significant relationships were also
 1650 observed between urea and log values of D_{eff} in the combined samples of *Pseudo-nitzschia*
 1651 spp., *Skeletonema* spp. and mixed diatom assemblages (slope= -2.07, $r^2= 0.27$, $p<0.005$).
 1652 Also evident in the data presented in Figure 3.9 is the representation of certain groups along
 1653 the size spectra, as expressed by D_{eff} . In particular, samples of high *Thalassiosira* spp. vol-
 1654 umes were characterised by a small D_{eff} ($\sim 10 \mu m$) and had relatively high vNO_3^- . Two data
 1655 points with small D_{eff} and large vNO_3^- (Fig. 3.9 a) correspond to surface samples with high
 1656 NO_3^- ($10-13 \mu mol N L^{-1}$) and high light availability (400-700 kWh) during the winter sampling
 1657 period. The samples with high *Ceratium furca* volumes were characterised by the largest effec-
 1658 tive diameters and appeared to take up urea relatively quickly (Fig. 3.9 c), but assemblages of
 1659 *Pseudo-nitzschia* spp. displayed higher rates.

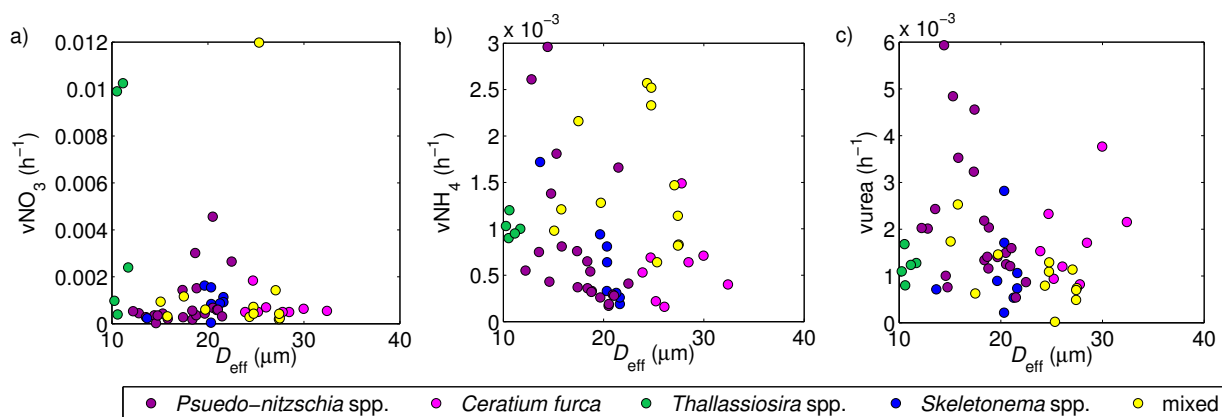


Figure 3.9: Relationships between mass-specific uptake rates and effective diameter (D_{eff}). a) vNO_3^- b) vNH_4^+ and c) v_{urea} . The species groupings give an indication of the taxon with the greatest % contribution to assemblage volume but do not indicate complete dominance of assemblage. Approximate values of biovolumes per species (as indicated in Table 3.1) were used to define the groups.

1660 Discussion

1661 Over the study period (January 2012-January 2013), Saldanha Bay was dominated by diatoms
1662 but with different species composition in each sample month. A strong seasonal signal in water
1663 column dynamics was observed between winter and summer months. During summer months,
1664 strong thermal stratification was observed and NO_3^- concentrations were highest below the
1665 thermocline (between 6 and 9 m). Winter was characterised by homogeneous NO_3^- concen-
1666 trations throughout the water column. The uptake of NO_3^- , and consequently f -ratios, were
1667 maximum during winter/spring months, in association with maximum NO_3^- availability. Uptake
1668 kinetic parameters (V_{max} and K_s) were variable over the study period, with highest deviance ob-
1669 served in half saturation constants for NO_3^- . Urea uptake did not conform to Michaelis-Menten
1670 enzyme kinetics. No significant relationship was observed between effective diameter and the
1671 mass-specific rates of nitrogen uptake.

1672 Water column dynamics

1673 The results of water column dynamics confirm what is generally known of the hydrodynamics of
1674 the bay (Monteiro and Largier, 1999). Temperature profiles observed over the entire sampling
1675 period showed strong stratification during mid/late summer months with high NO_3^- concentra-
1676 tions restricted to depth. During winter and early spring, the water column was well mixed and
1677 characterised by high nutrient availability across all depths. Saldanha Bay is modulated by the
1678 adjacent coastal waters via density-driven exchanges, in which nutrient-rich waters enter the
1679 bay at depth as upwelling-favourable winds relax (Monteiro et al., 1998; Monteiro and Largier,
1680 1999; Probyn et al., 2000). In contrast to what often occurs in coastal waters, surface heating
1681 maintains strong stratification in the bay during coastal upwelling events (Monteiro and Largier,
1682 1999) and nitrate-rich waters do not protrude to the surface during the upwelling-favourable sea-
1683 son. In addition, associated with the strong thermocline, the subsurface Chl-*a* maximum was
1684 located from 4-7 m, acting as an effective 'nutrient trap' (Williams et al., 2013; Probyn et al.,
1685 2015) preventing input of NO_3^- to surface waters, which were thus nitrate-deplete.

1686 During winter months, lowest Chl-*a* and cell abundances occurred in conjunction with high-
 1687 est nutrient concentrations, with overall highest nutrient uptake rates observed at 0 m and 3 m.
 1688 Spring/early summer (September) marked the onset of highest biomass and cell abundances
 1689 as light became less limiting. These results demonstrate nitrate-limited surface waters during
 1690 summer, and light-limited bottom waters during winter, as exemplified in Figure 3.10.

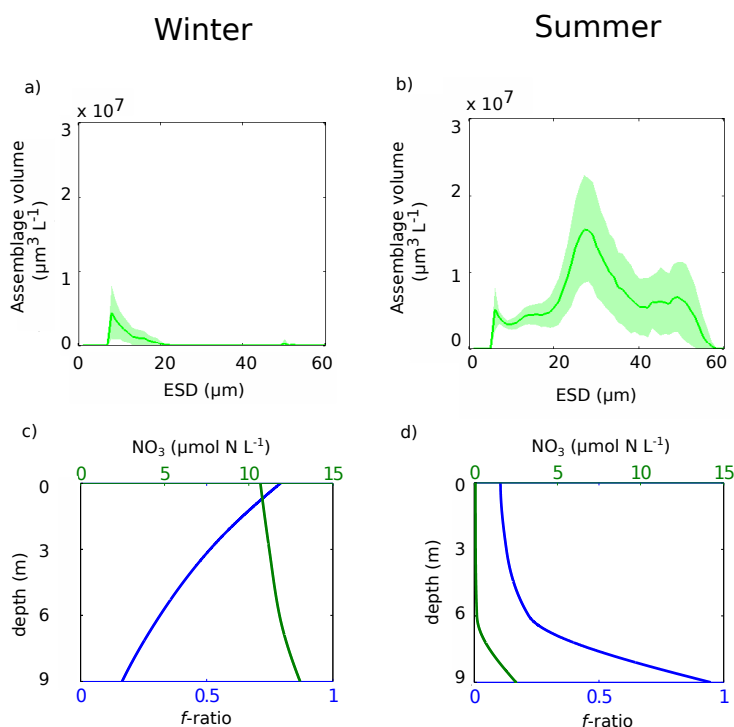


Figure 3.10: Example conditions during winter (a,c) and summer (b,d) of size spectra (a,b) and f-ratio and NO_3^- concentrations (c,d). Example size distribution examples represent the mean (green line) and standard deviations (green shading) of all measured depths. f-ratio (blue line) and NO_3^- concentrations (green lines) are depicted as averages. Winter data are from 2 July 2012, and summer data are from 21 January 2013. F

1691 Limitations to nitrogen uptake

1692 The linear relationship between mass specific uptake rates and the different nitrogen sources
 1693 (with the exclusion of apparently light-limited samples from depth) is similar to that observed by
 1694 Dugdale et al. (2006). Although seemingly contradictory to the Michaelis-Menten hyperbolae
 1695 achieved in the kinetic experiments, the linear relationship between $v\text{NO}_3^-$ and NO_3^- may be
 1696 indicative of the “shift up” phase in the upwelling cycle (Wilkerson and Dugdale, 1987) following

1697 nutrient depleted conditions. This linear relationship from *in situ* specific NO_3^- uptake rates has
1698 been similarly observed by Lomas and Glibert (1999; 2000) up to concentrations of $\sim 60 \mu\text{mol}$
1699 N L^{-1} , and for NH_4^+ in Dugdale et al. (2007), as seen in their Figure 4a.

1700 It is also suggested that $v\text{NO}_3^-$ was likely repressed/inhibited by high ambient NH_4^+ concen-
1701 trations, as seen by Dortch (1990), who proposed that at concentrations $>1 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$, NH_4^+
1702 will suppress NO_3^- uptake. There is a wide range of observed NH_4^+ concentrations in the lit-
1703 erature that cause a repression of NO_3^- uptake (Glibert et al., 2016 and references therein).
1704 NH_4^+ concentrations as low as $0.1 \mu\text{M}$ have been observed by Wheeler and Kokkinakis (1990)
1705 in oligotrophic environments, and as high as $4\text{-}10 \mu\text{M}$ in other field observations (Dugdale et
1706 al., 2007; Glibert et al., 2014). The threshold appears to be high in coastal systems. For ex-
1707 ample, in Bodega Bay (Dugdale et al., 2006) and San Francisco Bay (Dugdale et al., 2007),
1708 the repression of $v\text{NO}_3^-$ occurred at NH_4^+ concentrations between $4\text{-}12 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$. The data
1709 from this study suggest that a large proportion of the NO_3^- inventory was inaccessible to the
1710 algal assemblage when NH_4^+ concentrations were $>1 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$ (Fig. 3.8b). Statistically, the
1711 variability in the uptake rates of all nitrogen species was best accounted for by relevant ambient
1712 concentrations (Table 3.5).

1713 Uptake kinetic parameters

1714 The results of the kinetic experiments confirm several key processes of connection between
1715 community structure and the nutrient utilisation strategies employed in response to the avail-
1716 ability of the most limiting resources. On average, higher V_{max} and lower K_s values (*sensu*
1717 Dortch, 1990) observed for NH_4^+ (Table 4.5) indicate an overall preference for NH_4^+ over NO_3^- .
1718 This has been a common observation in cultured (Syrett, 1981) and field observations of phyto-
1719 plankton communities (e.g. McCarthy et al., 1977). NH_4^+ is generally considered the preferred
1720 nitrogen source by phytoplankton (McCarthy, 1980; Syrett, 1956; Losada et al., 1981) espe-
1721 cially as N becomes more limiting (Glibert et al., 2016). The reasons for NH_4^+ preferences are
1722 considered to be the higher energetic costs associated with assimilating NO_3^- (Syrett, 1981),
1723 whereby significantly more energy must be spent to first reduce NO_3^- to NO_2^- , and then to NH_4^+ ,

1724 requiring additional transport systems and ATP (Mulholland and Lomas, 2008).

1725 Collos et al. (2005) reported covariation between K_s ($\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$) values and ambient NO_3^-
1726 concentrations ($\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$), with a regression equation of: $\log K_s = 0.62 \log \text{NO}_3^- - 0.09$. No
1727 significant relationship between K_s and ambient concentrations of NO_3^- , or NH_4^+ were observed
1728 in this data set. However, after removing the exceptionally high K_s values from September
1729 (SB5) and November (SB6), the relationship between K_s and NO_3^- becomes significant. The
1730 equation follows closely to that observed by Collos et al. (2005): $\log K_s = 0.56 \log \text{NO}_3^- -$
1731 0.02 : ($r^2 = 0.85$, $p = 0.02$). Doing this is considered to be justified for two main reasons: 1)
1732 The linear relationship proposed by Collos et al (2005), in the authors' own words, 'should
1733 be used with caution', as some groups, such as diatoms, are known to have genus-specific
1734 responses to high NO_3^- levels (Collos et al., 1997, 2005) and thus taxonomic adaptations may
1735 override the short term effects of fluctuating conditions; and 2) the exceptionally high K_s values
1736 (21; 42 $\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$) correspond to high NO_3^- availability and assemblages with an abundance
1737 of *Skeletonema costatum* (September) and *Pseudo-nitzschia/Thalassiosira* spp. (November).
1738 The high K_s values reflect a linear dependency on NO_3^- in the uptake kinetic experiments for
1739 these two samples, where saturation did not occur in concentrations $>20 \mu\text{M NO}_3^-$.

1740 A culture study of *Skeletonema costatum* (Serra et al., 1978) found that NO_3^- only reached
1741 saturation in concentrations $>6 \mu\text{M}$, and it was suggested that such a threshold may differentiate
1742 between transporter/uptake systems within the cell, i.e. 'multi-phasic systems' (Collos et al.,
1743 2005). Biphasic kinetic patterns have also been observed in Chesapeake and Delaware Bays
1744 by Lomas and Glibert (1999) at concentrations $>30 \mu\text{M}$. The activation of a second uptake
1745 system could be a good indication that NO_3^- is no longer limiting. Collos et al. (1997) also found
1746 a shift from the classic Michaelis-Menten kinetics to 'linear' kinetics as the population shifted
1747 from *Chaetoceros* spp. to a larger diatom *Thalassiosira* spp. The presence of a multi-phasic
1748 uptake system for NO_3^- represents the differences between active uptake, potentially after a
1749 period of N starvation and the active filling of storage vacuoles (Collos et al, 1997; Lomas and
1750 Glibert, 2000), and passive uptake, in which diffusion dominates uptake when NO_3^- becomes
1751 no longer limiting. It has since been noted that including multi-phasic uptake systems in model

1752 estimates of NO_3^- limited plankton growth would improve model estimates of NO_3^- in upwelling
1753 areas of fluctuating and exceptionally high NO_3^- availability (Dugdale et al., 2007).

1754 Urea uptake kinetics did not conform to Michaelis-Menten. What is apparent across the urea
1755 experiments is a peak in uptake rates at low concentrations (Fig. 3.7). Similar behaviour has
1756 been observed in studies of other systems (Eppley et al., 1971; Kristiansen and Lund, 1989;
1757 Tamminen and Irmisch, 1996; Bronk et al., 2004), and is also observed in kinetic studies of
1758 other organic substrates (glucose, amino acids) (Gocke et al., 1981). Potentially erroneously
1759 high determinations of ambient concentrations were originally suggested by Eppley et al. (1971)
1760 as an experimental artefact leading to the urea curves. Kinetic experiments carried out by Tam-
1761 minen and Irmisch (1996) found a similar effect in their results but they suggested that chemical
1762 analyses to derive urea concentrations may have something to do with over estimations of urea
1763 uptake rates at such low concentrations. When they used the kinetic sum ($K_s + S_n$), as cal-
1764 culated via a linear transformation of the Michaelis-Menten curves (Wright and Hobbie, 1966),
1765 rather than ambient nutrient concentrations, they had a much more realistic curve. Tammi-
1766 nen and Irmisch (1996) call into question the concept of 'biologically available' urea, whereby
1767 chemical analyses may induce some degree of manipulation to the samples which 'can bring
1768 some absorbed, chelated or biologically loosely bound compartments into solution'. The curve
1769 observed in their Figure 1 (Tamminen and Irmisch, 1996) was explained by the over estima-
1770 tions made when analysing urea concentrations at such low concentrations (Grasshoff, 1976).
1771 Alternatively, Bronk et al. (2004) suggested that low atom % enrichment concentrations, rela-
1772 tive to high substrate concentrations could cause errors in calculated uptake rates at substrate
1773 concentrations $<0.05 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$. They saw similar curves in their urea kinetic experiments
1774 in *Karenia brevis* blooms in the Gulf of Mexico and reported urea atom % enrichment values
1775 between 4-85% . Nominal ^{15}N label concentrations used in this study were up to $20 \mu\text{mol N}$
1776 L^{-1} , well within the range of concentrations used in other studies where no such curves were
1777 reported (e.g. Cochlan and Bronk, 2001). The urea atom % enrichments in this study were
1778 made up of 100% stock solution to accommodate the background levels, and a 10% spike so-
1779 lution, which was used to get a range of increasing concentrations (see Table 3.2). This was

1780 done to circumvent the problem of widely varying aqueous enrichments that result from spiking
1781 with 100% stock solutions. Therefore, final aqueous enrichments were always close to 10% of
1782 ambient concentrations, with some small departures depending on how close the 100% spike
1783 was to achieving a 10% enrichment of ambient concentration. In this case, the explanation
1784 suggested by Bronk et al (2004) does not apply. The suggestion by Tamminen and Irmisch
1785 (1996) is more feasible, where the concentrations measured by the diacetyl monoxime method
1786 overestimates the biologically available urea. Chen et al. (2015) assessed the different meth-
1787 ods of analysing urea and still recommended the diacetyl monoxime method over the enzymatic
1788 (urease) method, but argue sample preparation and timing need to be controlled very precisely.
1789 It is thus suggested that the seemingly erroneous urea curves are due to potential overestima-
1790 tions of biologically available urea. Further tests are recommended to incorporate suggestions
1791 made by Chen et al. (2015) to assess if any differences are observed. It is also recognised
1792 that metabolic enzymes and mechanisms of regulation that are involved in the assimilation of
1793 urea are diverse and not well understood; genome sequencing holds potential for further insight
1794 (Solomon et al., 2010).

1795 **Effective diameter in low biomass systems**

1796 The effective diameter is a useful metric to quantify the net bio-optical properties of phytoplank-
1797 ton assemblages (Bernard et al., 2009; Evers-King et al., 2014). In a high biomass scenario,
1798 $>100 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$ of particulate nitrogen (see Chapter 2), it was shown that D_{eff} could quantify
1799 the mass-specific uptake rates of regenerated nitrogen according to allometric size scaling. In
1800 this data set, although qualitatively a negative trend is apparent between $v\text{NH}_4^+/v\text{urea}$ and D_{eff} ,
1801 there is no significant relationship. No relationship was found between $v\text{NO}_3^-$ and D_{eff} either.
1802 This is suggested to be due to the nature of the community structure: relating the shape and
1803 range of the size spectra. On average, the biomass, as measured by particulate nitrogen, was
1804 4 times smaller in this data set than in Chapter 2.

1805 It appears that the efficacy of using D_{eff} to represent the whole assemblage is sensitive to
1806 the shape of the distribution, and complex size distributions are poorly represented by effective

1807 diameters. The narrow spread in calculated effective diameter used in this study (mean= 19.92
1808 μm , mean absolute deviation = 4.41 μm) may also explain the statistically poor relationships
1809 between effective diameters and the other nitrogen sources. Equally, the particle size distri-
1810 butions used assume finite limits at both ends of the size spectrum but, with inherently open
1811 ended particle size distributions, there will be some inevitable error in this assumption (Sheldon
1812 and Parsons, 1967; Bryan et al., 2012). Furthermore, as the communities were predominantly
1813 made up of chain forming diatom species, the effects of chain formation need to be under-
1814 stood, because these can alter the interpretations of size spectra measured. Future work is
1815 recommended to address the quantification of a bulk size metric in low biomass waters.

1816 **Conclusions**

1817 The hydrodynamics in Saldanha Bay are driven by density differences between the bay and
1818 the inner shelf where warm, nutrient-deplete surface waters exit the bay, and cold, nutrient-
1819 rich waters enter the bay at depth. During the upwelling season, Saldanha maintains strong
1820 thermal stratification and injections of NO_3^- rich waters into the bay rarely penetrate through
1821 the thermocline. Sub-surface Chl-*a* maxima, sitting around 4m, could also act as a 'nutrient
1822 trap', whereby nutrients are taken up before they are brought to the surface. The summer
1823 is characterised by nutrient-deplete surface waters and NO_3^- rich water at depth. During the
1824 winter, downwelling-favourable winds (north-westerlies) allow for mixing and a homogeneous
1825 distributions of nutrients within the water column. The uptake of nitrogen reflects this seasonal
1826 dynamic in the water column. Light limitation occurs at depth during both seasons, but nutrient
1827 limitation at the surface is prominent during the summer months. Nutrient availability, or the
1828 ability to access it, was considered to be the strongest limiting factor in phytoplankton growth
1829 and biomass accumulation.

1830 The phytoplankton assemblages were predominantly composed of diatom species, with a
1831 presence of dinoflagellates in many samples, but most notably at the end of the upwelling sea-
1832 son. Community structure was particular to each sampling period, with high diversity within

1833 diatoms observed throughout the year, and highest diversities observed during winter. This
1834 falls in line with the commonly accepted notion that species diversity will increase in response
1835 to greater competition for resources (Tilman, 1986), in the case of Saldanha Bay, nutrient avail-
1836 ability and light. The nutrient acquisition strategies of the assemblages, as measured by K_s and
1837 V_{max} , varied according to the availability of ambient nutrient concentrations.

1838 This case study was used to assess how well D_{eff} could quantify the size structure and
1839 the nitrogen utilisation of the measured communities, which showed a predominantly strong
1840 presence of many species of diatoms. In chapter 2, D_{eff} could adequately represent the size
1841 dependencies of the uptake of regenerated nitrogen, but not NO_3^- . This was considered to be
1842 due to some bi-modality in the size spectra, as well as the presence of diatoms. In this data set,
1843 no relationship was found between the uptake of any of the nitrogen species and D_{eff} . This
1844 was surprising for NH_4^+ and urea, given the strong relationships found in the previous chapter.
1845 The reason for such poor relationships are considered to be due to the nature of the size
1846 spectra measured, the small range in size distributions and the much lower biomass observed
1847 in Saldanha Bay. It is concluded that D_{eff} could not represent the nitrogen dynamics of the low
1848 biomass communities observed in this dataset.

1849 Chapter 4

1850 Estimating nitrogen uptake from ambient 1851 concentrations and cell size

1852 Abstract

1853 Bulk measurements can be made of phytoplankton standing stocks on a quasi-synoptic scale
1854 but it is more difficult to measure rates of production and nutrient uptake. This chapter presents
1855 a method to estimate nitrogen uptake rates in productive coastal environments. Observed phy-
1856 toplankton cell size distributions and ambient nitrogen concentrations are used to calculate
1857 uptake rates of nitrate, ammonium and total nitrogen by different size fractions of diverse phy-
1858 toplankton communities in a coastal upwelling system. The data are disaggregated into size
1859 categories, uptake rates are calculated and these uptake rates are re-aggregated to obtain bulk
1860 estimates. The calculations are applied to 72 natural assemblages for which nitrogen uptake
1861 rates and particle size distributions were measured *in situ*. The calculated values of total N
1862 uptake integrated across all size classes are similar to those of *in situ* bulk measurements (N
1863 slope=0.90), (NH_4^+ slope=0.96) indicating dependence of NH_4^+ and total N uptake on ambient N
1864 concentrations and cell size distributions of the phytoplankton assemblages. NO_3^- uptake was
1865 less well explained by cell size and ambient concentrations, but regressions between measured
1866 and estimated rates were still significant. The results suggest that net nitrogen dynamics can

1867 be quantified at an assemblage scale using size dependencies of Michaelis-Menten uptake pa-
1868 rameters. These methods can be applied to particle size distributions that have been routinely
1869 measured in eutrophic systems to estimate and subsequently analyse variability in nitrogen
1870 uptake.

1871 Introduction

1872 The diversity of phytoplankton communities influences the flows of carbon, nitrogen and other
1873 important elements through the marine environment. Marine ecosystem models that aim to
1874 capture this relationship represent phytoplankton diversity either by different functional groups
1875 (Follows and Dutkiewicz, 2011), cell size (e.g. Moloney et al., 1991; Baird and Suthers, 2007;
1876 Banas, 2011; Ward et al., 2012) or by both (Le Quéré et al., 2005; Aumont et al., 2015). Our
1877 understanding of the consequences of this diversity on global biogeochemistry is still limited
1878 (Lomas et al., 2014). In a broad ecological context, in addition to taxonomic distinction, the
1879 term diversity currently includes functionality within an environment (Tilman, 2001; McGill et al.,
1880 2006; Westoby and Wright, 2006; Litchman et al., 2007). A challenge in biogeochemical mod-
1881 eling is to try account for diversity among organisms and its role in nutrient flux (Follows and
1882 Dutkiewicz, 2011), plasticity in organism traits (Pahlow and Oschlies, 2009), trade-offs in en-
1883 ergy expenditure and the relationships between physiological traits and environmental forcing
1884 (Aksnes and Cao, 2011). The most commonly used function to model nutrient uptake is the
1885 Michaelis-Menten equation and parameter values for maximum uptake rates (V_{max}) and half
1886 saturation constants (K_s) are widely available in the literature (see Litchman et al., 2015), often
1887 resolved at the species level in batch/continuous cultures (e.g. Eppley et al., 1969 and see
1888 Edwards et al., 2015) and typically at a genus level from natural populations (see Collos et al.,
1889 2005). The variation in V_{max} and K_s within phytoplankton groups and in relation to cell size were
1890 extensively reviewed by Litchman et al. (2007) and Edwards et al. (2012), where large varia-
1891 tion was evident between and within phylogenetic groups. K_s values, for example, were found
1892 to vary over two orders of magnitude for a given group (Collos et al., 2005; Aksnes and Cao,

1893 2011; Franks, 2009; Seeyave et al., 2009). Collos et al. (2005) found strong genus-specific dif-
1894 ferences in K_s between *Thalassiosira* spp. and *Chaetoceros* spp., both diatoms, under similar
1895 nutrient levels. Absolute values of V_{max} and their range are highest in diatoms, whereas K_s
1896 values are highest in dinoflagellates (Litchman et al., 2007; Edwards et al., 2012). The paucity
1897 of K_s values to account for all genotypic diversity in natural assemblages, under variable en-
1898 vironmental conditions, as well as computational costs, has meant that K_s is often regarded a
1899 constant. The assumption that these parameter values are invariant within phylogenetic groups
1900 has been highlighted as a potential source of error when parameterising nutrient uptake by
1901 Michaelis-Menten kinetics (Franks, 2009).

1902 Several studies have aimed to quantify the dynamic physiological response of phytoplank-
1903 ton cells to changing environmental conditions (e.g. Smith and Yamanaka, 2007; Pahlow et al.,
1904 2008; Bonachela et al., 2011; Smith et al., 2011) and have improved our conceptual understand-
1905 ing of cellular constraints on nutrient uptake and growth. Such dynamic trait-based approaches
1906 have been incorporated into large-scale modeling studies (Arteaga et al., 2014), with improved
1907 agreement between *in situ* values and model output (Smith et al., 2015). In many situations,
1908 the necessary *in situ* data are not available to constrain the dynamic response of a diverse,
1909 natural assemblage within a realistic, local context. Relatively simple size-based models can
1910 adequately replicate large scale dynamics of nitrogen in the marine environment (Ward et al.,
1911 2012; Acevedo-Trejos et al., 2014) with the advantage of reducing the number of free param-
1912 eters, and thus model uncertainty, by using size-scaling exponents (Baird and Suthers, 2007;
1913 Banas, 2011; Ward et al., 2012). The size structure of plankton assemblages and the dominant
1914 size fraction will dictate, to some degree, the pathways of nutrients and how they are transferred
1915 to higher trophic levels (Probyn et al., 1990; Moloney et al., 1991; Chisholm, 1992; van der Lin-
1916 gen et al., 2006). Litchman et al. (2007) found strong empirical relationships between organism
1917 size and physiological rates (V_{max} and K_s) and considered cell size to be a master trait. Our un-
1918 derstanding of the variability in uptake kinetic parameters in relation to community composition
1919 and environmental variability is poor, and there is a need for field-based and laboratory studies
1920 of physiological processes of phytoplankton groups (Gregg et al., 2003; Litchman et al., 2007;

1921 Allen and Fulton, 2010).

1922 This study hypothesised that some of the variance in Michaelis-Menten parameter values
1923 can be accounted for by considering the size spectra of the phytoplankton populations. To
1924 test such an hypothesis, measured particle size distributions (from Beckman Coulter Counter
1925 data) were used to calculate sets of theoretical, size-based biomass and Michaelis-Menten
1926 parameters for different field samples. Ambient nitrogen concentrations from each sample were
1927 applied to Michaelis-Menten models to estimate size-based nitrogen uptake rates and these
1928 were integrated across all sizes for the sample. These calculated rates were subsequently
1929 compared to measured *in situ* bulk uptake rates to estimated uptake rates of NO_3^- and total
1930 N (total N = $\text{NO}_3^- + \text{NO}_4^+$). This research offers a tool to extend the application of pre-existing
1931 particle cell size distributions, relying on robust assumptions of the size dependence of nitrogen
1932 metabolism.

1933 **Methods**

1934 Uptake rates were calculated from measured *in situ* particle size distributions (PSDs) and ambi-
1935 ent nutrient concentrations. Figure 4.1 illustrates the steps that were taken and details of each
1936 step are discussed further below. In brief,

1937 1) Measured PSDs were converted to a biomass per size bin by assuming a volume to
1938 nitrogen ratio (Moloney and Field, 1989; Menden-Deuer and Lessard, 2000). The sum of the
1939 estimated biomasses per size bin was compared to a corresponding *in situ* measurement of
1940 particulate nitrogen (PN).

1941 2) Uptake parameters (V_{max} and K_s) were calculated per size bin, using published relation-
1942 ships in Ward et al. (2012).

1943 3) A Michaelis-Menten model was used to estimate absolute uptake rates (ρ) of NO_3^- and
1944 NH_4^+ in $\mu\text{mol L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$ for each size bin, using ambient nutrient concentrations. The sums of the
1945 estimated uptake rates per size bin (ρNO_3^- and ρNH_4^+) were compared to corresponding *in situ*
1946 uptake measurements.

1947

The implications of the assumptions of each step are evaluated in the discussion.

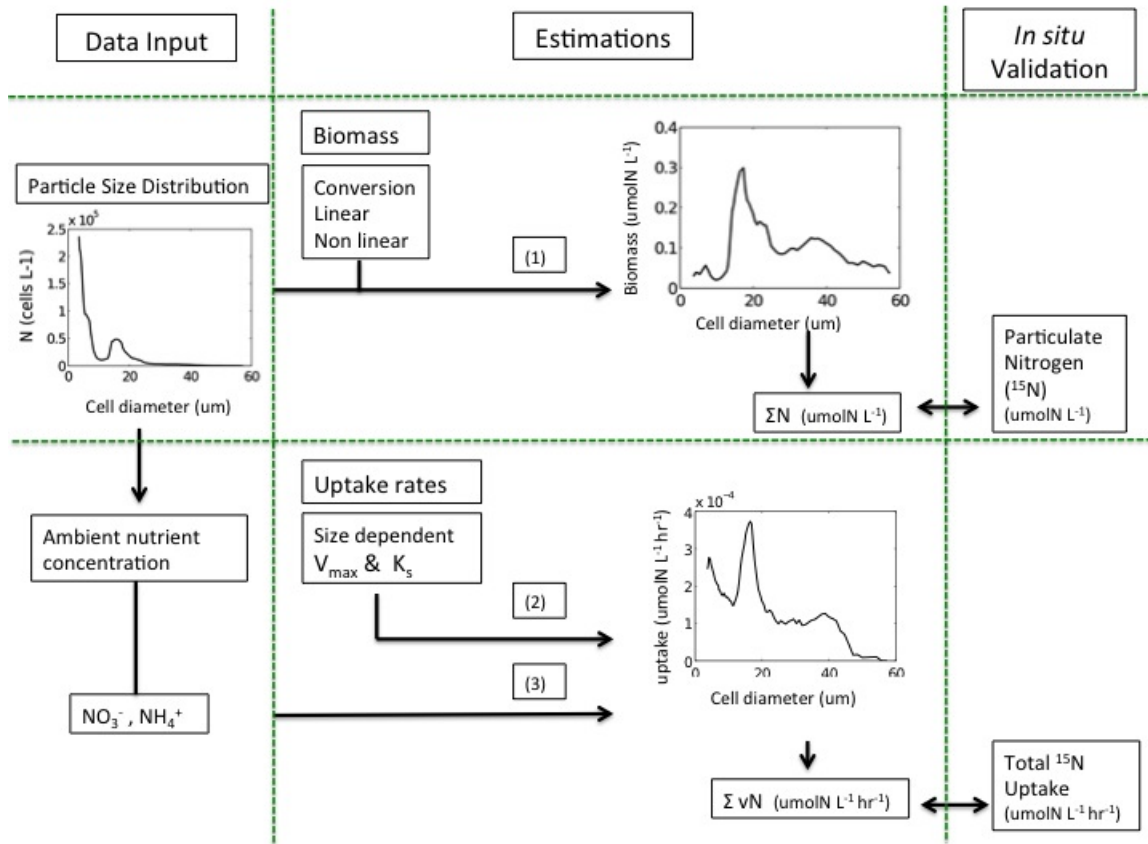


Figure 4.1: The steps taken to estimate biomass and uptake rates of NH_4^+ and NO_3^- from two data sources: Coulter Counter derived particle size distributions (PSD) and ambient nutrient concentrations.

1948 ***In situ***

1949 Data from three separate case studies (Chapters 2 and 3) were used in this analysis. Data
 1950 from Lamberts Bay came from sampling periods 25 February - 11 March 2004 and 15 March
 1951 - 6 April 2005. In Saldanha Bay, sampling took place every 2 months for a period of 3 days
 1952 from January 2012 to January 2013. Chapter 2 provides comprehensive descriptions of all
 1953 ancillary data collected during these periods. Data used in this study include: particle size
 1954 distributions (PSDs), biomass measured as particulate nitrogen, nitrogen concentrations (NO_3^- ,
 1955 NH_4^+) and the uptake of each. For the determinations of particle size distributions, nutrient
 1956 concentrations, ¹⁵N uptake and particulate nitrogen calculations, water samples were collected
 1957 using a 5 L Niskin water sampler and stored in 20 L black buckets, which were then transported

1958 to the laboratory within 1-2 hours of collection. Details of all methods of determination of nutrient
 1959 concentration, nitrogen uptake and particulate biomass (PN) are described in Chapter 2. It must
 1960 be noted that incubation lengths differ between Lamberts Bay and Saldanha Bay. Lamberts
 1961 Bay incubations were for up to 4 hours, during midday light, whereas Saldanha Bay data were
 1962 incubated for 24 hours. The differences between the two incubation times has been accounted
 1963 for by scaling the 4 hour incubations to 24 hours. The assumption was made that daylight was
 1964 14 hours and that uptake during the night was 55% less for NH_4^+ and 12% less for NO_3^- , as
 1965 measured at in-shore locations in Probyn et al. (1996). The effects of isotope dilution are not
 1966 accounted for.

1967 **(1) Converting particle size distributions (PSDs) to nitrogen biomass**

1968 Particle size measurements were made using a Beckman Coulter Counter as described in
 1969 previous chapters. PSDs were used to calculate total biomass of the assemblage in $\mu\text{molN L}^{-1}$
 1970 (Fig. 4.2) to compare to *in situ* measurements of particulate nitrogen. Measured biomass of
 1971 particulate nitrogen ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) includes all particulate matter down to a cut-off nominal size
 1972 of 0.7 μm (GF filter), whereas Coulter Counter measurements have a lower limit of 3 μm . Two
 1973 separate methods were used to estimate cellular nitrogen from cell volume for each size bin.

1974 **Non-Linear conversion of cell volume to biomass**

1975 Menden-Deuer and Lessard (2000) collated published relationships between cell volume (μm^3)
 1976 and cellular nitrogen for dinoflagellates. Their resulting equation 4.1 was applied to each size bin
 1977 to derive a biomass per cell in the size class (Fig 4.2). Total biomass per size bin was calculated
 1978 by multiplying by cell abundance (N) within each size bin. The equation and values follow
 1979 Menden-Deuer and Lessard (2000) and are hereafter referred to as the non-linear conversion:

$$\log pg N cell^{-1} = -0.928 + 0.849 * \log Vol (\mu m^3) \quad (4.1)$$

1980 Linear conversion of cell volume to biomass

1981 Moloney and Field (1989), following Fenchel and Finlay (1983), assumed a linear relationship
 1982 between cell volume (μm^3) and nitrogen content (μmolN), hereafter referred to as the linear
 1983 conversion (see Fig. 4.2). Fenchel and Findlay (1983) used separate conversions for carbon
 1984 and nitrogen (Table 4.1) based on values published in Finlay and Uhlig (1981). Carbon biomass
 1985 was also calculated using this method, as a carbon biomass is required in addition to nitrogen
 1986 biomass to solve for size-dependent uptake parameters, detailed below.

Table 4.1: Conversions used by Moloney and Field (1989) to estimate biomass (pgC, pgN) via a linear relationship between cellular volume and carbon/nitrogen content. Values from Fenchel & Findlay (1983)

Conversion
$1\mu\text{m}^3 = 0.071 \text{ pgC (dry)}$
$1\mu\text{m}^3 = 0.0185 \text{ pgN (dry)}$

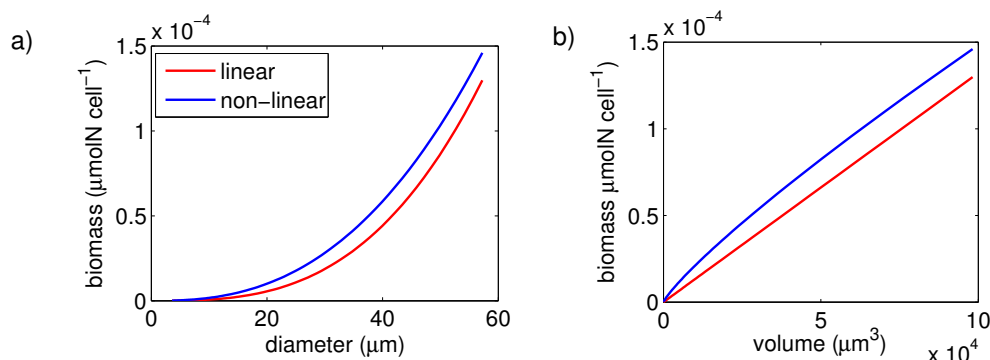


Figure 4.2: The linear (Moloney and Field,1989) and non-linear conversion (Menden-Deuer and Lessard, 2000) techniques employed to estimate biomass from particle size distributions. a) biomass along the equivalent spherical diameter distribution b) the relationship between cell volume and biomass.

1987 (2) Uptake parameters

1988 Allometric

1989 Size-dependent uptake parameters, V_{max} ($\mu\text{mol N } \mu\text{mol C}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$) and K_s ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$), were
 1990 calculated per size bin (Fig. 4.3) using general allometric equations ($a\text{Vol}^b$) with values a and

1991 b from Ward et al. (2012) (Table 4.2). Conversions of units were carried out by normalising to
 1992 carbon, calculated using the linear conversion to carbon (Table 4.1). Using formulations from
 1993 Ward et al. (2012), NH_4^+ uptake is faster per cell than NO_3^- and small cells take up nitrogen at
 1994 faster rates and with smaller K_s values than large cells (Fig. 4.3c).

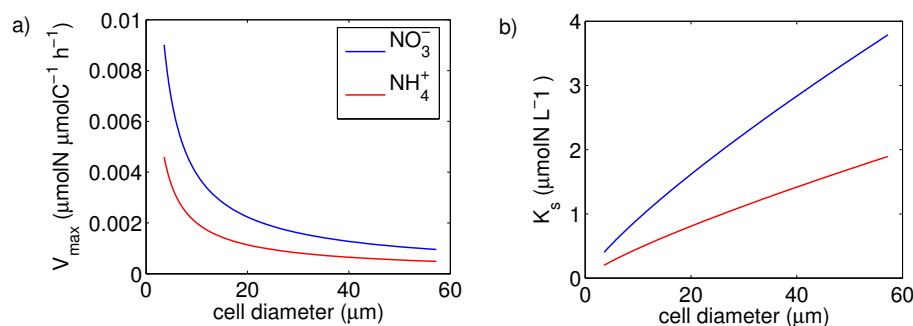


Figure 4.3: Values of Michaelis-Menten uptake parameters as a function of size, calculated using the formulations of Ward et al. (2012). a) mass specific maximum uptake rate (V_{max}) and b) half saturation constant (K_s) per cell in each size bin for NO_3^- (blue line) and NH_4^+ (red line) (from Ward et al., 2012)..

1995 Non-allometric

1996 The non-allometric rates were calculated using a fixed V_{max} and K_s value for all bins along the
 1997 size spectrum. Sensitivity of the parameter values was tested by comparing the outcome of 9
 1998 combinations of realistic values for NO_3^- : $V_{max} = [0.1, 0.5, 1]$, $K_s = [0.5, 2, 15]$; and NH_4^+ : V_{max}
 1999 $= [0.1, 0.5, 1]$ and $K_s = [0.1, 1, 10]$.

2000 (3) Estimating uptake rates

2001 The size-dependent parameters (Table 4.2) were applied to the Michaelis-Menten equation
 2002 to calculate nitrogen uptake rate for each size bin, using nitrogen biomass per size bin and
 2003 ambient nitrogen concentrations. The NO_3^- taken up by the assemblage was calculated by
 2004 summing across all size bins:

$$\rho\text{NO}_3^- = \sum_{i=1} \frac{(V_{max_i} * \text{PN}_i * \text{NO}_{3_i}^-)}{(\text{NO}_3^- + K_{s_i})} \quad (4.2)$$

2005 where PN is the nitrogen biomass of the cells per size bin. The same equation was used to
 2006 calculate NH_4^+ . Estimated uptake rates (h^{-1}) were compared to the relative measured *in situ* N
 2007 uptake.

2008 Assessments were made between measured and estimated values of uptake rates of NO_3^- ,
 2009 NH_4^+ and total N by using an absolute percentage difference and bias estimates (Zibordi et al.,
 2010 2004).

2011 **Re-examining the effects of ammonium repression**

2012 The inhibition, or more accurately, repression of nitrate uptake by ammonium was calculated
 2013 using the exponential parameter function (Wroblewski, 1977; Dutkiewicz et al., 2009; Ward
 2014 et al., 2012). The ammonium repression term (ψ) was estimated using the measured *in situ*
 2015 data and was solved using a three variable (V_{max} , K_s , ψ) equation:

$$\rho NO_3^- = V_{max_{no_3}} \left(\frac{NO_3^-}{NO_3^- + K_{s_{no_3}}} \cdot e^{-\psi NH_4^+} \right) \quad (4.3)$$

2016 For total nitrogen uptake (ρN) the uptake of NH_4^+ was incorporated:

$$\rho N = V_{max_{no_3}} \left(\frac{NO_3^-}{NO_3^- + K_{s_{no_3}}} \cdot e^{-\psi NH_4^+} \right) + V_{max_{nh_4}} \left(\frac{NH_4^+}{NH_4^+ + K_{s_{nh_4}}} \right) \quad (4.4)$$

Table 4.2: Parameters and their units used to estimate biomass and uptake rates from measured particle size distributions. Where appropriate, daily rates were divided by 24 to get hourly rates. Size-dependent uptake parameters, V_{max} and K_s , are calculated as $aVol^b$

Parameter	symbol	unit	a	b	value	Reference
cell volume	Vol	μm^3				
cell abundance per size class	N	cells L^{-1}				
mass cell^{-1} per size class		$\mu\text{molIN cell}^{-1}$				
Σ assemblage biomass		$\mu\text{molIN L}^{-1}$				
maximum uptake rate	V_{max, no_3}	$\text{mmolIN mmolC}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$	0.51	-0.27		Ward et al. (2012)
	V_{max, nh_4}	$\text{mmolIN mmolC}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$	0.26	-0.27		Ward et al. (2012)
half saturation constant	K_{s, no_3}	mmolIN m^{-3}	0.17	0.27		Ward et al. (2012)
	K_{s, nh_4}	mmolIN m^{-3}	0.085	0.27		Ward et al. (2012)
Σ assemblage uptake rate of total N	ρ_N	$\mu\text{molIN L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$				
Σ assemblage uptake rate of NO_3^-	$\rho_{\text{NO}_3^-}$	$\mu\text{molIN L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$				
Σ assemblage uptake rate of NH_4^+	$\rho_{\text{NH}_4^+}$	$\mu\text{molIN L}^{-1} \text{h}^{-1}$				
ambient nutrient concentration	$\text{NO}_3^-, \text{NH}_4^+$	$\mu\text{molIN L}^{-1}$				
NH_4^+ repression parameter	ψ	$\mu\text{mol N}^{-1}$			1.99	

2017 **Results**

2018 ***In situ***

2019 The range of values for measured particulate nitrogen, ambient nitrogen concentrations and
2020 uptake rates vary among the three case studies (Fig. 4.4). This variability reflects distinct
2021 assemblages observed in each case study. Highest values of particulate nitrogen (PN) were
2022 observed in Lamberts Bay (LB04 and LB05) relative to Saldanha Bay. LB05 was dominated by
2023 a dinoflagellate *Prorocentrum triestinum* with maximum particulate nitrogen reaching $146 \mu\text{mol}$
2024 N L^{-1} , in association with lowest ambient nitrogen concentrations. SB samples had relatively
2025 low biomass (average $10.3 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$), almost completely dominated by diatoms. Highest
2026 field-measured uptake rates of total nitrogen (Fig. 4.5 a) and NO_3^- (Fig. 4.5 b) were seen
2027 in LB04, corresponding to an assemblage dominated by a ciliate *Myrionecta rubra* and a di-
2028 atom (*Skeletonema* spp.) with a maximum of $0.67 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$. Rates of NH_4^+ uptake were
2029 lower on average than NO_3^- uptake in all case studies (Fig. 4.5 c). The size spectra mea-
2030 sured were highly variable per sample. Figures 4.6 a, c and e show typical size distributions
2031 of a low biomass range, and Figures 4.6 b,d, and f show samples of high biomass, illustrating
2032 distributions of multi-modality.

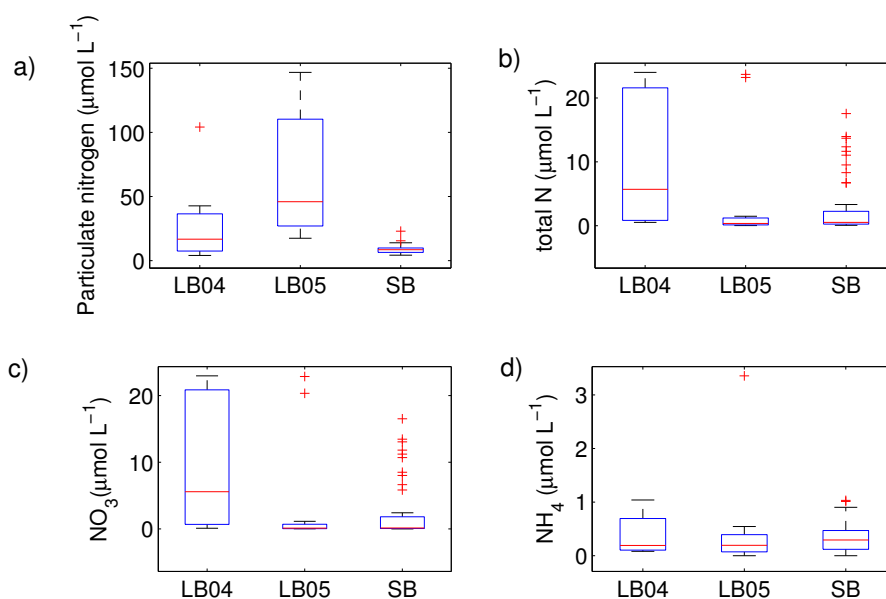


Figure 4.4: Summary box plots of the *in situ* data from Lamberts Bay 2004 and 2005 (LB04, LB05) and Saldanha Bay (SB) for a) particulate nitrogen, b) total N ($\text{NO}_3^- + \text{NH}_4^+$), c) NO_3^- and d) NH_4^+ concentrations. Boxes are medians, 25th and 75th quartiles and whiskers are extreme values not considered outliers, which are shown as crosses. SB (n=52), LB04 (n=9), LB05(n=13)

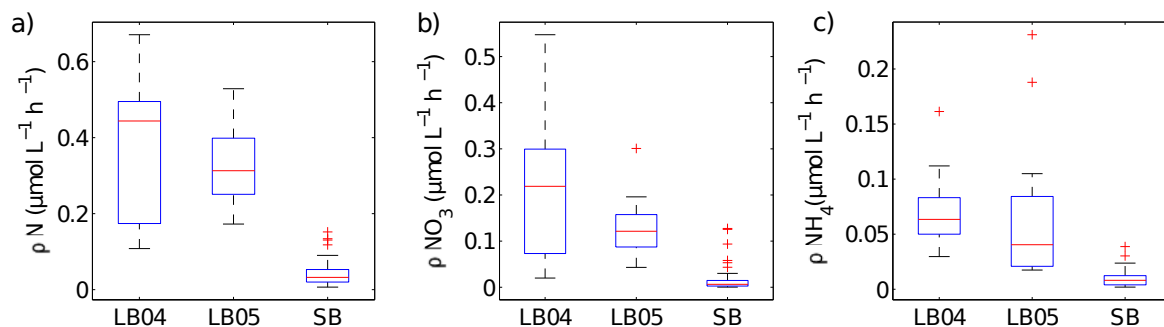


Figure 4.5: Summary box plots of *in situ* measured uptake rates for a) total nitrogen, b) NO_3^- and c) NH_4^+ for the different case studies (LB04, LB05, SB). Boxes are medians, 25th and 75th quartiles and whiskers are extreme values not considered outliers, which are shown as crosses. SB (n=52), LB04 (n=9), LB05 (n=13)

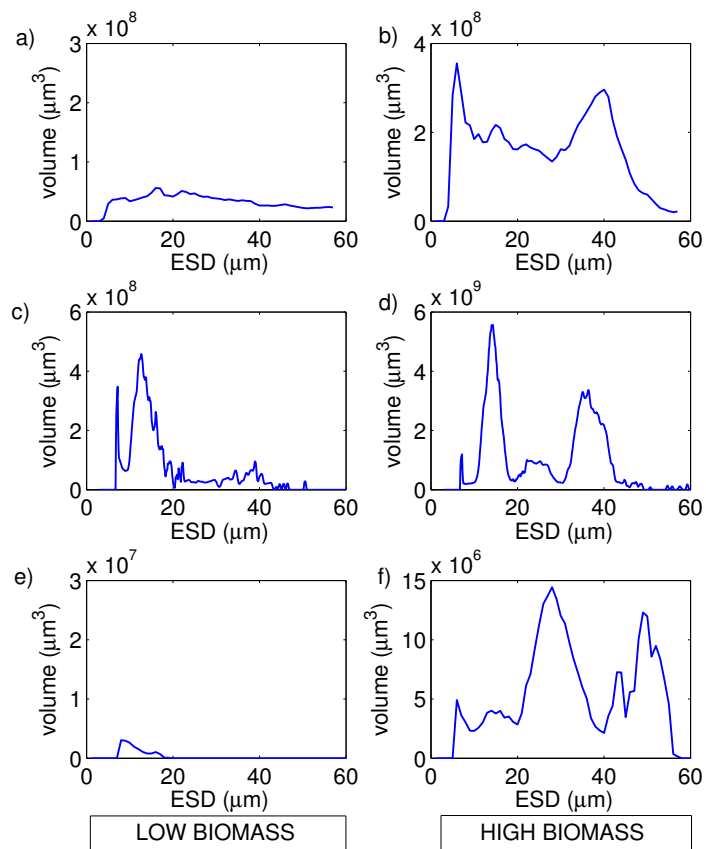


Figure 4.6: Example size spectra from the Coulter Counter for low biomass (left panels) and high biomass (right panels) for (a,b) LB04, (c,d) LB05, and (e,f) SB sample periods.

2033 Conversions to biomass

2034 The two methods of conversion from cell volume to mass gave estimates of particulate nitrogen
 2035 that were significantly correlated with measured *in situ* values (Fig. 4.7). For the combined
 2036 data set (SB and LB), the strongest correlation resulted from the non-linear conversion ($r=0.78$,
 2037 $p=1.01 \times 10^{-8}$), although the linear conversion was almost as strong ($r= 0.76$, $p=1.68 \times 10^{-8}$).
 2038 The two regressions comparing measured *in situ* and estimated particulate nitrogen using the
 2039 linear and non-linear conversion methods, were assessed by testing H_0 : slope = 1 (Table 4.4).
 2040 The regression slopes for the linear and non-linear conversions were greater than one, but were
 2041 not significantly different; linear ($t_{0.05,72}=3.65, p=0.99$) and non-linear ($t_{0.05,72}=3.33, p=0.99$). Both
 2042 slopes provided surprisingly good predictions of biomass from particle size distributions and
 2043 both conversion methods. The non-linear conversion of Menden-Deuer and Lessard (2000)

2044 was used in further estimates of uptake rates.

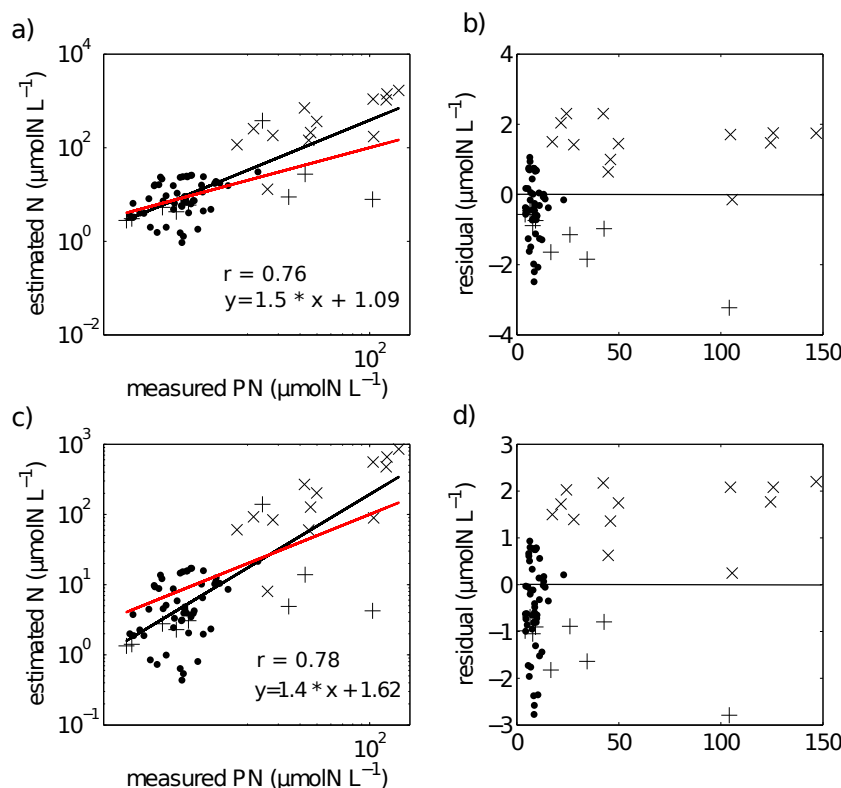


Figure 4.7: Regression analysis showing the relationships between measured and estimated particulate nitrogen using a) non-linear conversion, with b) corresponding log residuals, c) linear conversion with d) corresponding log residuals. Black line refers to fitted regression line, red line has a hypothetical slope of 1:1 such that measured=estimated values. (● SB), (+ LB04), (x LB05)

2045 Estimating nitrogen uptake

2046 The ranges of estimated N uptake rates were similar to those measured *in situ* (Fig. 4.8). Pre-
 2047 dictions of nitrogen uptake rates were significantly correlated with respective measured uptake
 2048 rates: NO_3^- ($r=0.60$, $p<0.05$); NH_4^+ ($r=0.61$, $p<0.05$) and total N ($r=0.67$, $p<0.05$). The slopes
 2049 of the relationship between measured and estimated uptake rate values were also assessed
 2050 testing H_0 : slope=1 (Table 4.3). The regression slopes were not statistically different from 1
 2051 for NH_4^+ ($t_{0.05,67}=-0.26$, $p=0.30$) and total N ($t_{0.05,67}=-0.26$, $p=0.40$); this was not the case for
 2052 NO_3^- ($t_{0.05,72}=-3.06$, $p<0.01$). An inhibition term (ψ) of $1.99 \mu\text{mol N}^{-1}$ was estimated for NO_3^-
 2053 uptake. The resulting predictions for ρNO_3^- were similar to those of ρNO_3^- with no inhibition,

2054 with an increase in bias when inhibition is included (bias $\rho\text{NO}_3^- = 0.03$, bias $\rho\text{NO}_3^{-\psi} = -0.72$).
 2055 Predictions of total N uptake do not differ greatly when an inhibition term is applied; ρN (slope=
 2056 0.97), ρN^ψ (slope= 1.05) (Table 4.3) but more bias is introduced with an inhibition term ($\rho\text{N}^\psi =$
 2057 0.89 , bias $\rho\text{N} = -1.10$). Estimations of ρNO_3^- (both with and without an inhibition term) did not
 2058 match those measured *in situ* (Table 4.3). The comparisons between measured and calculated
 2059 mass-specific rates also showed poor agreement, and no statistical similarity was observed be-
 2060 tween the two data sets (Table 4.3). The relationships between estimated and measured ρNH_4^+ ,
 2061 ρN and ρN^ψ were not statistically different (Table 4.3) and are thus considered good predictions
 2062 of the uptake of NH_4^+ and total N. The non-allometric rates were also compared with each other
 2063 and an hypothetical 1:1 slope (Fig. 4.9). Of the 9 different combinations of uptake parameters
 2064 tested (H_0 slope =1), one set was close to 1 but significantly different from 1 (slope = 0.96 ,
 2065 $p < 0.005$) for NO_3^- , and 2 sets for NH_4^+ , the closest being not significantly different from 1 (slope
 2066 = 1.2 , $p = 0.78$) (Table 4.4)

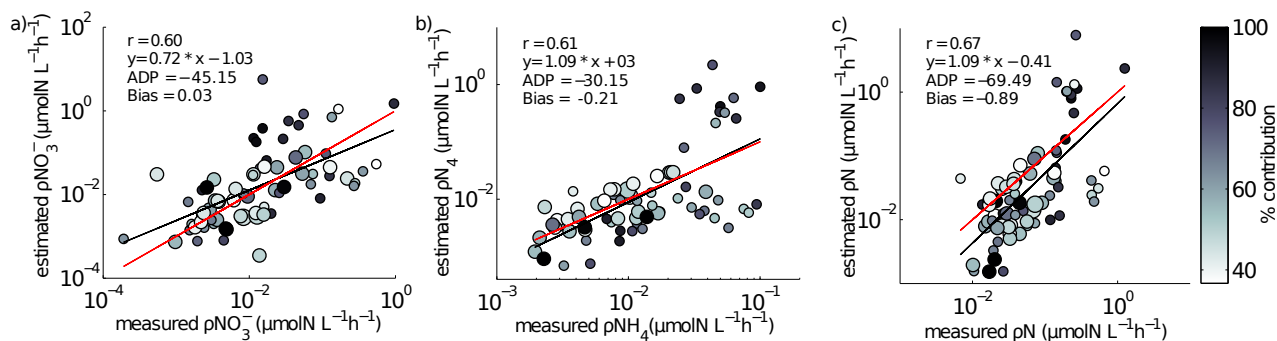


Figure 4.8: Comparisons between *in situ* measured and model estimated uptake rates using size dependent V_{max} and K_s from Ward et al. (2012). a) ρNO_3^- b) ρNH_4^+ , c) ρN . Symbol size is representative of two size groups: small circle is $<15 \mu\text{m}$; large circle is $15\text{--}30 \mu\text{m}$. The third, largest size group of $30\text{--}60 \mu\text{m}$ did not dominate uptake rates in any of the samples. Colour bar represents the percentage contribution to the bulk uptake rate by the dominant size group. Red line is a hypothetical 1:1 slope, black line is the regression between measured and model uptake rates.

Table 4.3: Comparison of regressions and t test values between *in situ* measured and calculated uptake rates of NO_3^- , NH_4^+ and total N. $t = a - 1 / \text{Standard Error (SE)}$ where H_0 : slope = 1. DF = 72, critical value of t (1.66) and alpha ($\alpha = 0.05$).

	a (slope)	SE	b (intercept)	r^2	t(df=72)	p value
Particulate nitrogen						
measured v non linear estimate	1.5	0.141	-1.09	0.61	3.33	0.99
measured v linear estimate	1.4	0.144	-1.62	0.59	3.65	0.99
Absolute uptake rates						
measured v estimated ρNO_3^-	0.68	0.10	-1.36	0.37	-3.06	<0.01
measured v estimated ρNO_3^- ($\psi = 1.99$)	0.65	0.11	-2.25	0.32	-3.20	<0.01
measured v estimated ρNH_4^+	0.92	0.15	-0.60	0.36	-0.51 _{df=67}	0.30
measured v estimated ρN	0.97	0.13	-0.90	0.42	-0.26	0.40
measured v estimated ρN ($\psi = 1.99$)	1.05	0.14	-0.88	0.44	-0.34	0.63
Mass-specific uptake rates						
measured v estimated $v\text{NO}_3^-$	-0.26	0.11	-2.44	0.07	-11.13	<0.01
measured v estimated $v\text{NH}_4^+$	0.44	0.09	0.27	0.28	-6.48	<0.01
measured v estimated $v\text{N}$	0.38	0.26	-3.85	0.03	-2.33	0.01

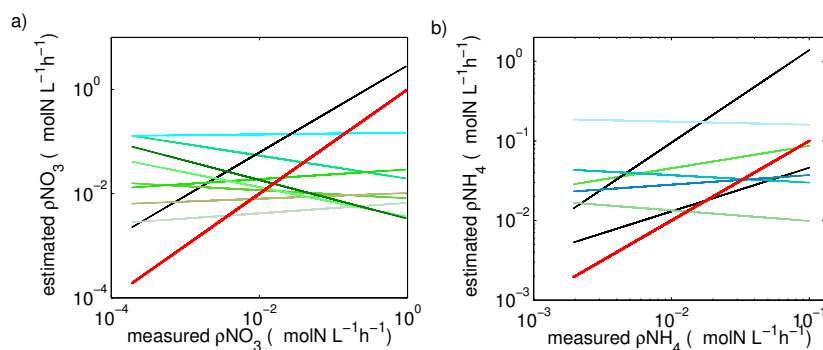


Figure 4.9: Trend lines for each combination of V_{max} and K_s for a) NO_3^- and b) NH_4^+ . Red line is the hypothetical 1:1 slope, black lines represent slopes that are closest to 1 (see Table 4.4).

Table 4.4: The combination of uptake parameters (V_{max} and K_s) that resulted in the regression slope closest to 1.

	K_s	V_{max}	a(slope)	t(df _{NO3} = 72, df _{NH4} =69)	p-value
NO_3^-	0.5	1	0.96	-3.72	<0.01
NH_4^+	0.01	1	1.2	0.79	0.78
NH_4^+	0.5	1	0.4	-2.30	0.01

2067 **Re-examining the effect of ammonium repression on NO_3^- uptake.**

2068 Using a three parameter (V_{max} , K_s and ψ) equation to predict mass specific $v\text{NO}_3^-$ (h^{-1}) explains
 2069 a larger portion of the observed variability in measured $v\text{NO}_3^-$ values ($r^2 = 0.4$) than when using
 2070 just two predictors ($r^2 = 0.35$) (Fig. 4.10). The solution results in an ammonium repression
 2071 parameter (ψ) value of $1.99 \mu\text{mol N}^{-1}$.

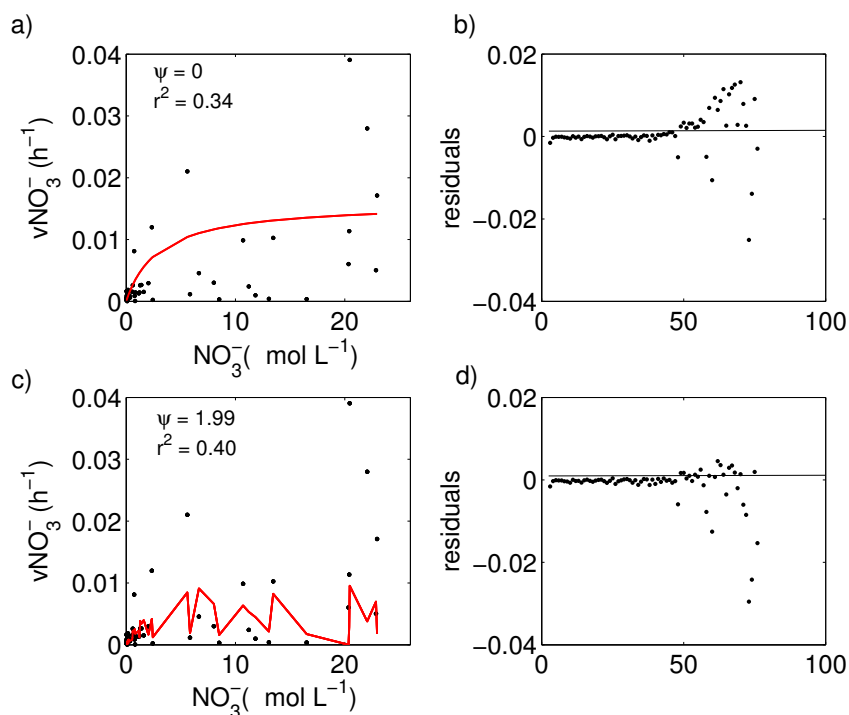


Figure 4.10: Best model fit (red line) to explain variability in observed $v\text{NO}_3^-$ as a function of a) NO_3^- concentration and c) NO_3^- concentration and NH_4^+ repression and their respective residuals b), d).

2072 When using the repression term ($\psi=1.99$), as estimated using best model fit (Fig 4.10),
 2073 the predictions for ρNO_3^- are similar to those of ρNO_3^- with no inhibition, although bias is re-
 2074 duced (bias $\rho\text{NO}_3^- \psi = 0.05$, bias $\rho\text{NO}_3^- = 0.16$). The difference in statistical significance between
 2075 measured and estimated uptake values, between incorporating a repression term and not, is
 2076 evident, although marginal. Predictions of total N uptake better match those measured *in situ*
 2077 when an inhibition term is applied; ρN (slope= 1.07), ρN^ψ (slope=1.05) (Table 4.3) and much
 2078 less bias (bias $\rho\text{N}^\psi = 0.06$, bias $\rho\text{N} = 0.14$). Estimations for ρNO_3^- (both with and without re-
 2079 pression term) did not statistically match those measured *in situ* (Table 4.3). The relationships

2080 between estimated and measured ρNH_4^+ , ρN and ρN^ψ are not statistically different (Table 4.3)
2081 and are thus considered good predictions of NH_4^+ and total N uptake.

2082 Discussion

2083 Predictions of biomass and nitrogen uptake rates were made using measured particle size
2084 distributions of natural assemblages, volume to biomass conversions (Menden-deuer et al.,
2085 2000) and size-dependent Michaelis-Menten uptake parameters (Ward et al., 2012). The *in situ*
2086 values used to validate the modeled values had a large range and thus a large spread existed
2087 in the data. There were good correlations between estimated and measured particulate N. This
2088 strong correlation gives necessary confidence in using particle size distributions derived from
2089 the Beckman Coulter Counter to predict the uptake rates of NH_4^+ , total N and to a lesser extent
2090 NO_3^- . Significant correlations were found between modeled and *in situ* measured uptake rates
2091 and the values predicted for the uptake of NH_4^+ and total N were statistically similar to values
2092 measured *in situ*.

2093 Conversions to biomass

2094 Both conversion models used to derive particulate nitrogen from particle size distributions (via
2095 non-linear or linear functions) yield similar results, with a good correlation between estimated
2096 and measured values. The regression equations used to estimate biomass were applied to
2097 all assemblages, which were most often mixed assemblages, i.e. containing dinoflagellates
2098 (LB05), ciliates (LB04), and diatoms (SB). LB05 had a high percentage of the dinoflagellate
2099 *Prorocentrum triestinum* at very high biomass (max. $146 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$, and the correlation coef-
2100 ficients for this particular data set are strongest. Even so, when applied to assemblages con-
2101 taining different taxa (ciliates or diatoms), overall the conversion factors performed well and the
2102 regression fit is close to a 1:1 relationship between measured and estimated nitrogen biomass.
2103 An even better fit may have resulted if group-specific conversion factors were used, but such
2104 empirical relationships for volume:nitrogen of the groups measured in this study were not found

2105 in the literature. It is noted that diatoms, for example, contain less carbon per unit volume than
2106 other groups, attributed to their significantly higher vacuole volume (Strathmann, 1967; Sicko-
2107 Goad et al., 1984). Cellular nitrogen content or nitrogen stores have also been observed to
2108 vary considerably between different species of phytoplankton (Parsons et al., 1961; Dortch and
2109 Conway, 1984).

2110 Further errors could have been introduced by the assumptions made in deriving particle
2111 size distributions via a Coulter Counter, which assumes sphericity of cells. This could lead
2112 to underlying bias because of non-spherical groups (e.g. dinoflagellates) or particles of elon-
2113 gate shape, e.g. chain-forming diatoms, which are known to introduce error and can lead to
2114 an under/overestimation of total volume (Boyd and Johnson, 1995). Furthermore, the Coulter
2115 Counter measures down to 2 μm diameter (with confidence from 5 μm) and thus omits the sub-
2116 micron range due to limitations in technical capabilities. Nevertheless, the Coulter Counter has
2117 been used in several studies to successfully derive volume to carbon ratios (Mullin et al., 1966;
2118 Strathmann, 1967; Montagnes et al., 1994) and the presented results provide confidence that
2119 such data can adequately represent the particulate biomass of the nitrogen inventory in natural,
2120 diverse assemblages in eutrophic systems, characterised by large cells and high biomass.

2121 The data presented here show that particle size distributions convert well to a measure of
2122 biomass, despite the broad scale application of a dinoflagellate volume:nitrogen conversion to
2123 mixed assemblages, the exclusion of sub-micron size ranges, and the assumptions of sphericity
2124 when using the Coulter counter. It has been noted that quantitative measurements of particulate
2125 carbon/nitrogen are in general lacking (Behrenfeld et al., 2006), and it is suggested that Coulter
2126 Counter derived PSDs can provide adequate measures of nitrogen biomass, most notably,
2127 when examining communities in eutrophic systems. Such conversions may not be as successful
2128 in oligotrophic areas, where cell size distributions are characteristically dominated by pico/nano-
2129 plankton ($<2 \mu\text{m}$), but would need further investigation.

2130 **Estimating uptake rates**

2131 A significant correlation exists between the estimated and measured uptake rates of NO_3^- , NH_4^+
2132 and total N, for natural assemblages. The slopes of the regressions for the estimated versus
2133 measured values of NH_4^+ and total N uptake were close to 1, indicating statistical similarity to
2134 what was measured *in situ*. The size-dependence of the Michaelis-Menten uptake parameters,
2135 V_{max} and K_s , used by Ward et al. (2012), proved to be adequate values and yielded comparable
2136 results of nitrogen uptake to what had been measured *in situ*. Several studies have called into
2137 question the adequacy of the Michaelis-Menten kinetics equation to describe nutrient uptake
2138 in phytoplankton (Droop, 1974; Pasciak, 1974; Aksnes and Egge, 1991). These criticisms are
2139 based on the premise that the equation does not account for differences in uptake rates in lim-
2140 iting or non-limiting conditions (Rhee, 1974; Grover, 1991), or that internal stores of nutrients
2141 can dictate uptake based on simple diffusion limitation (Droop, 1974). Both Michaelis-Menten
2142 uptake parameters are subject to variability, not only in different species but due to differences
2143 in nutrient availability and varying environmental conditions (Lomas and Glibert, 1999; Collos
2144 et al., 2005 and references therein). Smith et al. (2009) suggest that optimal uptake kinet-
2145 ics, which accounts for physiological acclimation to fluctuating environmental conditions, is a
2146 superior alternative to standard Michaelis-Menten descriptions of V_{max} and K_s . A flexible phy-
2147 toplankton functional type (FlexPFT) model (Smith et al., 2015), which resolves the dynamic
2148 response of phytoplankton communities, was able to reproduce productivity and Chl-*a* values
2149 of two contrasting time series better than when no flexible response was included. Thus, the
2150 limitations of Michaelis-Menten are recognised, more particularly in its assumption that param-
2151 eter values are constant during environmental fluctuations. However, its use will most likely
2152 remain popular due its simplicity and the availability of parameter values in the literature. The
2153 variability of *in situ* measured uptake rates of NH_4^+ and total N is statistically matched by the
2154 variability in what was estimated using size-scaled parameters, which implies that much of the
2155 variability in Michaelis-Menten parameters, when applied at an assemblage scale, can be ac-
2156 counted for by simple size scaling of V_{max} and K_s . The results also imply that net community
2157 rates of NH_4^+ and total nitrogen uptake are driven by ambient concentrations and cell size.

2158 As expected, the case for NO_3^- was more complex. Although the slope of the estimated
2159 ρNO_3^- was positive and close to 1, statistically it was significantly different from 1, and reveals
2160 the potential importance of other influencing factors, in addition to cell size and ambient con-
2161 centration. The repression of NO_3^- uptake by NH_4^+ may explain some of the variability observed
2162 in *in situ* measured values that is not accounted for in the model estimates. Numerous studies
2163 have shown an interaction between NH_4^+ and NO_3^- uptake (e.g. McCarthy et al., 1975; Muggli
2164 and Smith, 1993; Harrison et al., 1996). NH_4^+ is generally considered to repress the uptake
2165 of NO_3^- (Dortch, 1990) but this is observed to be a highly variable process, where NH_4^+ can
2166 have little to no effect on NO_3^- uptake (Kokkinakis and Wheeler, 1987) or can enhance rather
2167 than inhibit NO_3^- uptake (Dortch, 1990). The extent to which NH_4^+ will affect NO_3^- uptake is
2168 not just species-dependent, but is also affected by physiological state and the preconditioning
2169 nutrient concentrations (Varela and Harrison, 1999; L'Helguen et al., 2008). Equally, the con-
2170 centration of NH_4^+ at which repression of NO_3^- uptake occurs varies between systems (Dortch,
2171 1990; Dugdale et al., 2006, 2007; Probyn et al., 2015). The effect of incorporating a repres-
2172 sion/inhibition term, in this case, made little difference to the estimates of ρNO_3^- and ρN . A
2173 range of inhibition parameter values used in other studies were also investigated, ranging from
2174 1.5 (Kishi et al., 2007) to 4.6 (Dutkiewicz et al., 2009), with little significant change in statistical
2175 comparisons. The value of 1.99, the outcome of a best fit model to the NO_3^- uptake values
2176 for this study, was deemed optimal for the range of values measured. Another suggestion to
2177 explain the deviations from Michaelis-Menten kinetics for NO_3^- uptake, is the potential for 'shift-
2178 up' kinetics described in Dugdale et al (1990; 2006). It was observed that NO_3^- uptake may
2179 not follow Michaelis-Menten kinetics consistently along the upwelling timeframe, where initial
2180 (highest) concentrations of NO_3^- will not equate to highest uptake rates, as communities take
2181 time to respond to new injections of NO_3^- .

2182 The predictions did not work when measured and calculated biomass-specific rates (h^{-1})
2183 were compared (Table 4.3). This is not surprising. The measured uptake rates result from an
2184 interplay between ambient nitrogen concentrations, total particulate nitrogen and the structure
2185 (size and taxa) of the phytoplankton assemblage, which will affect mass-specific rates as well

2186 as affinity for nitrogen. Mass-specific values influence physiological efficiency, with small cells
2187 having faster mass-specific rates and greater affinity for nitrogen at low concentrations than
2188 large cells. These influences of assemblage structure cannot be accounted for when dividing
2189 uptake rates by measured particulate nitrogen. Much of the uptake signal is dominated by the
2190 small fractions ($<15 \mu\text{m}$) of the size spectra (Fig. 4.8) and highest uptake rates are observed
2191 when the small size fractions dominate and thus biomass is low, illustrating that the successful
2192 predictions of uptake rates is not driven by high biomass. Absolute uptake rates can be con-
2193 sidered an 'ecosystem' metric of nitrogen dynamics, and this study shows that, in a eutrophic
2194 environment, size-scaled MM parameters can be used to predict NH_4^+ and total N uptake, keep-
2195 ing the numbers of parameters to a minimum and thus minimising uncertainty associated with
2196 each parameter. Data to constrain added parameters are not available from the *in situ* experi-
2197 ments. The non-allometric predictions, which use constant V_{max} and K_s values across the entire
2198 spectrum resulted in a variety of regression slopes, with few matching a 1:1 relationship. The
2199 kinetic parameter values used all fall within a realistic range observed in the region, and of the
2200 nine combinations tested (Fig. 4.9), no significant prediction was made for NO_3^- (although the
2201 slope was close to 1) and one successful prediction was made for NH_4^+ . However, it would be
2202 difficult to know in advance which parameter values to use, whereas the allometric calculations
2203 produced good matches to the observations.

2204 Conclusions

2205 The Michaelis-Menten uptake equation was applied to particle size distributions to calculate the
2206 size-dependent uptake of NO_3^- and NH_4^+ . A size dependence of uptake kinetic parameters was
2207 included so as to make cell size intrinsically constrained in the Michaelis-Menten uptake equa-
2208 tion. A large proportion of the variability observed in uptake rates of nitrogen measured *in situ*,
2209 in various assemblages, was explained by ambient nutrient concentrations and cell size, in spite
2210 of several simplifications and sources of error. The case for NO_3^- uptake was not as strong as
2211 NH_4^+ and is suggested to be due to the complex suppressive behaviour of NH_4^+ on NO_3^- uptake

2212 as well potential 'shift-up' effects observed in upwelling systems. In addition, accounting for the
2213 internal storage of NO_3^- may have improved estimations of ρNO_3^- , but are beyond the scope
2214 of these data. Nevertheless, realistic approximations of nitrogen uptake, and thus new pro-
2215 duction (Dugdale and Goering, 1967), are achieved when using size-scaled Michaelis-Menten
2216 uptake parameters and particle size distributions. The strength of this study lies in its appli-
2217 cation to *in situ* measurements of cell size distributions and ambient nutrient concentration, to
2218 derive approximations of nitrogen uptake. Further research is recommended to include Dis-
2219 solved Organic Nitrogen uptake rates into approximations of total N uptake, given its significant
2220 contribution to total production (Harrison et al., 1985; Probyn, 1988). This is no menial task
2221 however, given its complex kinetic behaviour (Eppley et al., 1971; Bronk et al., 2004; Solomon
2222 et al., 2010) and current lack of size-scaling relationships in the literature. New production, con-
2223 sidered to be the portion of primary production with the highest implications for carbon export
2224 or the flow of energy to higher trophic levels (Probyn, 1992; Hutchings, 1992; Dugdale et al.,
2225 2006), is a useful measurement in studies of ecosystem dynamics. In the absence of laborious
2226 and expensive ^{15}N data, the use of particle size distributions to estimate nitrogen uptake can be
2227 a useful tool in assemblage scale studies of nitrogen dynamics in productive coastal upwelling
2228 systems.

2229 Chapter 5

2230 Summary and conclusions

2231 Chapter Summary

2232 Chapter 2: Can effective diameter capture the nitrogen utilisation by high 2233 biomass blooms at upwelling/downwelling timescales?

2234 The presence of large cell sizes, in high biomass, is often associated with harmful algal blooms
2235 in the southern Benguela. In some instances, a single value phytoplankton size proxy, effective
2236 diameter (D_{eff}), representative of the gross optical characteristics of the assemblage, can
2237 indicate the presence of large celled, high biomass blooms using remote sensing data (Evers-
2238 King, 2014). The biogeochemical relevance of such a metric, which is closely related to the
2239 proliferation of high biomass blooms, was evaluated in this chapter. The nitrogen utilisation of
2240 two separate blooms in 2004 and 2005 in Lamberts Bay, dominated by harmful algal species
2241 (*Myrionecta rubra* and *Prorocentrum triestinum*), set the necessary scene to be able to evaluate
2242 the usefulness of such a metric. The nitrogen uptake was assessed in relation to environmen-
2243 tal conditions and community structure. Relationships between D_{eff} and the uptake rates of
2244 nitrogen were quantified.

2245 The main findings of this chapter were:

- 2246 • In 2004, *Myrionecta rubra* were present in both upwelling and downwelling conditions and
2247 proliferated to high biomass ($104 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) with high rates of primary productivity (303
2248 $\text{mgC m}^{-3} \text{h}^{-1}$). They showed a wide range in nitrogen use during their proliferation, as
2249 evidenced by the wide range in f -ratios (0.1 and 0.74) in samples in which they dominated
2250 the biomass.
- 2251 • In 2005, *Prorocentrum triestinum* reached even higher biomass ($147 \mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) and
2252 primary productivity ($340 \text{mgC m}^{-3} \text{h}^{-1}$). Their proliferation was associated with conditions
2253 characteristic of harmful algal blooms: stratified and NO_3^- depleted waters.
- 2254 • Urea appeared to be an important source of nitrogen during both harmful algal blooms.
- 2255 • Significant regressions showed that D_{eff} proved to be useful in quantifying the uptake of
2256 NH_4^+ ($r=-0.54$, $p<0.005$) and urea ($r=-0.59$, $p<0.005$).
- 2257 • No significant relationship between $v\text{NO}_3^-$ and D_{eff} was found. However, a positive corre-
2258 lation was evident between f -ratio ($v\text{NO}_3^- / [v\text{NO}_3^- + v\text{NH}_4^+ + \text{urea}]$) and D_{eff} , implying that
2259 D_{eff} can represent the bulk nitrogen dynamics in high biomass algal assemblages.
- 2260 • The lack of a significant relationship between $v\text{NO}_3^-$ and D_{eff} was suggested to be due
2261 to multi-modality in the size distributions of several samples as well as the presence of di-
2262 atoms, which might have obscured the relationship due to genus/species-specific nutrient
2263 utilisation strategies.

2264 Several limitations to this study are acknowledged. Firstly, this research does not consider the
2265 effect of top-down influences in structuring the phytoplankton assemblages, and subsequently
2266 the rates of nutrient uptake. Secondly, the nutrient pre-history of assemblages can play an
2267 important role in influencing the rates of nutrient uptake (Harrison et al., 1996), most notably
2268 NO_3^- , and were not considered in the analyses. Finally, quantitative insight might have been
2269 gained into the relationship (or lack thereof) between $v\text{NO}_3^-$ and D_{eff} had the microscopy sam-
2270 ples been sized. A comparative approach between microscopy and the Coulter Counter size
2271 distributions would have been useful. As a result, several questions arose that merit further
2272 consideration.

- 2273 • How well does the effective diameter (derived from Coulter Counter derived size distribu-
2274 tions) compare to other metrics of assemblage size? e.g. mean trait, trait variance, mean
2275 assemblage volume as derived from microscopy counts.
- 2276 • How do the different methods to derive size distributions (e.g. Coulter Counter and flow
2277 cytometry) compare in their output of an effective diameter? The use of a flow cytometer
2278 would facilitate a broader range in cell sizes (pico to micro plankton).

2279 **Chapter 3: What are the strongest factors influencing nitrogen uptake in**
2280 **diatom-dominated assemblages? Can effective diameter represent the**
2281 **bulk nitrogen dynamics in such assemblages?**

2282 In the previous chapter, the variable presence of diatoms was suggested to be one factor reduc-
2283 ing the strength of the relationship between $v\text{NO}_3^-$ and D_{eff} . Diatoms are observed to display
2284 strong species-specific strategies of nutrient uptake. Phytoplankton assemblages measured in
2285 a year-long case study in Saldanha Bay were diatom-dominated throughout the sample year,
2286 consequently providing a good record of the variability in nitrogen nutrition of diatoms as a
2287 group, under varying environmental conditions. Variability in the uptake rates of NO_3^- , NH_4^+ and
2288 urea was assessed in relation to environmental conditions and community structure. Concurrent
2289 kinetic experiments were also carried out to provide a deeper physiological basis to potentially
2290 explain observed patterns in N uptake. And finally the relationships between nitrogen uptake
2291 rates and D_{eff} were assessed. The main findings of chapter 3 were:

- 2292 • The variability in uptake rates of all nitrogen forms was mostly accounted for by ambient
2293 concentrations, and in many deeper samples (>6m), both in winter and summer, light lim-
2294 itation. Nutrient limitation at the surface was a prominent feature during summer months
2295 as injections of NO_3^- -rich bottom waters rarely protruded the strong thermocline.
- 2296 • Concurrent uptake kinetic experiments revealed high variability in Michaelis-Menten up-
2297 take parameters for NO_3^- and NH_4^+ . It is suggested that ambient nitrogen concentrations

2298 as well as taxon-specific uptake strategies were strong factors influencing the variability
2299 in the uptake parameters.

2300 • Urea did not conform, in any instance, to the saturating nature of Michaelis-Menten, sug-
2301 gested to be potentially due to over-estimations of 'biologically available' urea as a result
2302 of the method of analysing urea.

2303 • Qualitative relationships were observed between the mass-specific uptake rates of re-
2304 generated nitrogen and D_{eff} , but no significant relationship was observed for NO_3^- . This
2305 was suggested to be potentially due to the presence of chain forming diatoms and com-
2306 paratively lower biomass and a smaller range in size distributions than observed in the
2307 previous chapter.

2308 In addition to such findings, several limitations were recognised in this study: First, the effects
2309 of diatom chain-formation on the size distributions measured via a Beckman Coulter Counter
2310 were assumed to be negligible. The approximations of biovolume did not consider all of the
2311 species observed in the microscopy samples. But the most numerous and largest cell sizes
2312 were considered to contribute a large enough signal to assemblage dynamics to assess their
2313 influences. Further, the incubation times to estimate the nutrient uptake rates were longer than
2314 the 2-6hrs usually advised for such experiments. Several questions arose that merit deeper
2315 investigation.

- 2316 • How could multi-modality in size distributions be accounted for?
- 2317 • How does the presence of chain-forming diatoms affect a) the accurate measurement of
2318 particle cell size distributions and b) the calculations of effective diameter from the Coulter
2319 Counter? How do they compare to measurements from flow cytometry?

2320 **Chapter 4: Can a size-based approach to phytoplankton diversity and ni-**
2321 **trogen dynamics account for the variability observed in measured *in situ***
2322 **nitrogen uptake rates by natural populations?**

2323 Quantifying the nitrogen dynamics in a way that reflects the diversity in phytoplankton assem-
2324 blages is an exciting area of current research. This chapter took a size-based approach to
2325 estimating nitrogen uptake, by applying the Michaelis-Menten uptake equation to measured
2326 particle size distributions, and calculating the size-dependent uptake rates of NO_3^- , NH_4^+ and
2327 total nitrogen ($\text{NO}_3^- + \text{NH}_4^+$). The main findings of chapter 4 are:

- 2328 • Size distributions from the Beckman Coulter Counter were adequate means of quantifying
2329 the particulate biomass ($\mu\text{mol N L}^{-1}$) of measured assemblages via linear (Moloney and
2330 Field, 1989) or non-linear relationships (Menden-Deuer and Lessard, 2000).
- 2331 • The calculated values of NH_4^+ and total N uptake integrated across all size classes were
2332 similar to those of *in situ* bulk measurements (N slope=0.90), (NH_4^+ slope=0.96), indicat-
2333 ing dependence of NH_4^+ and total N uptake on ambient N concentrations and cell size
2334 distributions of the phytoplankton assemblages.
- 2335 • NO_3^- uptake was less well explained by cell size and ambient concentrations, but correla-
2336 tion coefficients between measured and estimated NO_3^- uptake rates were still significant.
- 2337 • Cell size distributions, ambient nutrient concentrations and size-dependent Michaelis-
2338 Menten uptake parameters are sufficient to derive accurate approximations of nitrogen
2339 uptake rates.

2340 Several limitations to this study are acknowledged. First, this chapter did not include Droop
2341 formulations of NO_3^- uptake to account for internal storage of NO_3^- . Many of the samples used
2342 in this study displayed high abundance of diatoms, whose physiology is dependent upon the
2343 capacity to store nutrients. It became evident that accounting for the cellular storage of NO_3^-
2344 might have improved model predictions. Second, further recognised is what Dugdale et al.

2345 (2006) pointed out regarding the need for formulations of NO_3^- uptake that are specific to up-
2346 welling systems. Suggestion made in their study were not addressed, but the results of the
2347 behaviour of NO_3^- in all three chapters lead to consideration of further possible formulations
2348 of the uptake model. Subsequently, several questions arose that merit further consideration in
2349 future studies, also addressed in 'Future Directions'.

- 2350 • Would the inclusion of multi-phasic kinetic parameters (Collos et al., 2005) improve esti-
2351 mates of NO_3^- uptake? This would involve setting thresholds of ambient NO_3^- concentra-
2352 tions for when different transport systems would be activated.
- 2353 • How would Droop formulations (size-dependent nitrogen storage) compare with Michaelis-
2354 Menten formulations? Assumptions could be made on the size-dependence of internally
2355 stored N.
- 2356 • Could simulations of size distributions using effective diameter and effective variance
2357 (*sensu* Arduini et al., 2005) be used to estimate nitrogen uptake rates? This could po-
2358 tentially extend the EAP algorithm to produce an approximated N flux value for observed
2359 algal assemblages using remote sensing data.

2360 **Conclusions**

2361 **Functional diversity in natural assemblages: the case for nitrogen**

2362 One underlying theme throughout this thesis was the representation of functional diversity in
2363 algal assemblages by the means of a measurable trait, cell size. The collation of available trait
2364 data in the literature (see Edwards et al. 2015) will undoubtedly spur on many further studies
2365 (e.g. Lindemann et al., 2016) regarding the variability in the many measured traits, most of
2366 which come from culture experiments. This research considered cell size and simplified size
2367 distribution proxies in natural assemblages, exposed to the fluctuating dynamics of a natural
2368 system. Thus, disentangling the concomitant factors on how cell size influences nitrogen dy-
2369 namics in a natural system will have some inevitable assumptions. Moreover, the use of a

2370 single value to represent the bulk properties of the assemblage will sometimes introduce some
2371 error. Nevertheless, on the whole, cell size was strongly correlated to the uptake of regenerated
2372 forms of nitrogen. This was evidenced when cell size was considered as D_{eff} (Chapter 2) and
2373 as entire size distributions (Chapter 4). In cases of no quantitative relationship (Chapter 3),
2374 the usefulness of D_{eff} was questionable in samples of low biomass, smaller size range and
2375 dominated by many chain-forming diatoms. The uptake of NO_3^- appeared less constrained by
2376 cell size when quantified as D_{eff} (Chapter 2 and 3), but the relationship is very promising when
2377 the entire size distribution is considered (Chapter 4). This reveals some differences between
2378 small and large cells and their capacity to utilise NO_3^- . The metabolic pathways involved in the
2379 assimilation of NH_4^+ and to a lesser extent, urea, are simpler and turnover rates shorter than
2380 for NO_3^- assimilation. Thus, it is suggested that the uptake of regenerated forms of nitrogen is
2381 consistent within the constraints of allometric scaling across the size spectrum, but NO_3^- may
2382 not be. Trait-based approaches to nitrogen dynamics, more specifically in upwelling systems,
2383 require the size spectrum as a whole to adequately quantify NO_3^- fluxes.

2384 **The effective diameter as a single value size proxy.**

2385 The effective diameter, D_{eff} , is a product of the equivalent algal population (EAP) algorithm
2386 that has been shown to be a quantitative, representative, size metric for the bulk bio-optical
2387 properties of algal assemblages (Bernard et al., 2009; Evers-King et al., 2014). Given the high
2388 frequency of harmful algal blooms in the region that are associated with large cells, and by proxy
2389 high biomass, the single-value size metric provides a useful platform in detecting the presence
2390 of certain harmful algal blooms (Evers-King, 2014). Furthermore, as D_{eff} is considered a rep-
2391 resentative of the dominant size class of an assemblage, it is also possible, and theoretically
2392 plausible, that further inferences from satellite data could be made of the biogeochemistry. This
2393 would involve regression relationships between phytoplankton cell size and nutrient fluxes. In
2394 this thesis, the assessments made of D_{eff} in relation to nitrogen uptake revealed some promis-
2395 ing results. In blooms of potentially harmful algal species at high biomass, the relationships
2396 between D_{eff} and mass-specific uptake rates of regenerated nitrogen were significant, but for

2397 NO_3^- the situation was more complex. But, in samples of comparatively lower biomass, quan-
2398 titatively useful relationships between the uptake rates for all nitrogen sources and D_{eff} were
2399 not evident. Given that regenerated nitrogen is often an important nutritional component of
2400 some HABs in the southern Benguela (Seeyave et al., 2009) and HABs are often observed
2401 in high biomass (Pitcher et al., 1998a), D_{eff} can be considered a useful metric in describing
2402 regenerated nitrogen dynamics in HABs. The conclusion from the previous section can also
2403 be affirmed; regenerated nitrogen appears to be constrained by allometric dependencies, but
2404 the uptake of NO_3^- is affected to a significantly lesser extent. Further work is needed to under-
2405 stand when the departures from allometric scaling laws are significant in quantifications of NO_3^-
2406 uptake.

2407 Future directions

- 2408 • ***In situ* observations:** Robust evidence from observational data shows that upwelling-
2409 favourable winds have intensified, most notably at higher latitudes (Rykaczewski et al.,
2410 2015; García-Reyes et al., 2015). The potential effects of this on the functioning of the
2411 Benguela upwelling ecosystem are yet to be mechanistically understood, opening many
2412 avenues for future research. Our current understanding is that differences between pe-
2413 riods of upwelling-favourable winds and downwelling-favourable winds mark bottom-up
2414 selective criteria for anchovy and sardine respectively (van der Lingen et al., 2006), large
2415 diatoms favouring anchovies and small dinoflagellates favouring sardines. The St Helena
2416 Bay monitoring line offers a time series (from 2000-2007) of *in situ* particle size distri-
2417 butions that may provide some insight into the patterns of cell size and environmental
2418 conditions at longer time scales than what is currently published. Can the dynamics in
2419 phytoplankton cell size distributions shed any light on long-term trends in the shifts be-
2420 tween dinoflagellate and diatom dominance in response to changes in physical forcing?
2421 Routine measurements of more extensive information on the phytoplankton assemblages
2422 using an imaging FlowCytobot would greatly enhance studies of phytoplankton diversity.

2423 Relationships between phytoplankton diversity, dominant cell size and the nature of the
2424 physical forcing at longer time scales would be informative.

- 2425 • **The EAP algorithm to infer approximate products of biogeochemistry:** One of the
2426 major findings of this thesis was that the shape of particle size spectra can provide valu-
2427 able information on the rates and dynamics of nitrogen (see chapter 4). In the absence
2428 of *in situ* measurements of particle size distributions, it is suggested that satellite-derived
2429 products, such as D_{eff} , can provide some information on the bulk properties of natural
2430 assemblages. In the context of nitrogen, D_{eff} , in itself, was only adequate under certain
2431 circumstances and thus further information is needed to quantify biogeochemistry. The
2432 generation of particle size distributions (sensu Arduini et al., 2005) by combining D_{eff}
2433 with other parameters, such as an effective variance (the width of the distribution), is hy-
2434 pothesised to be a potential method that can provide greater detail from satellite-derived
2435 ocean color products. Figure 5.1 illustrates a framework that depicts the guiding steps to
2436 inferring nitrogen dynamics from remote sensing data. The framework opens up several
2437 key avenues of future work which relate to testing the assumptions and sensitivities as-
2438 sociated with 1) generating the size spectra and 2) improving the size-dependent nutrient
2439 uptake model. A preliminary/exploratory discussion of each, in the context of the sug-
2440 gested framework (Fig. 5.1) as well as in their own right, is provided below. Preliminary
2441 results (Fig 5.2) suggest that in the absence of *in situ* measurements, D_{eff} can be used
2442 (either as a single value or in concert with effective variance) to approximate the nitro-
2443 gen utilisation rates of natural assemblages in a eutrophic system, such as the southern
2444 Benguela. Appendix I details the methods used in the preliminary assessments made in
2445 figure 5.2.

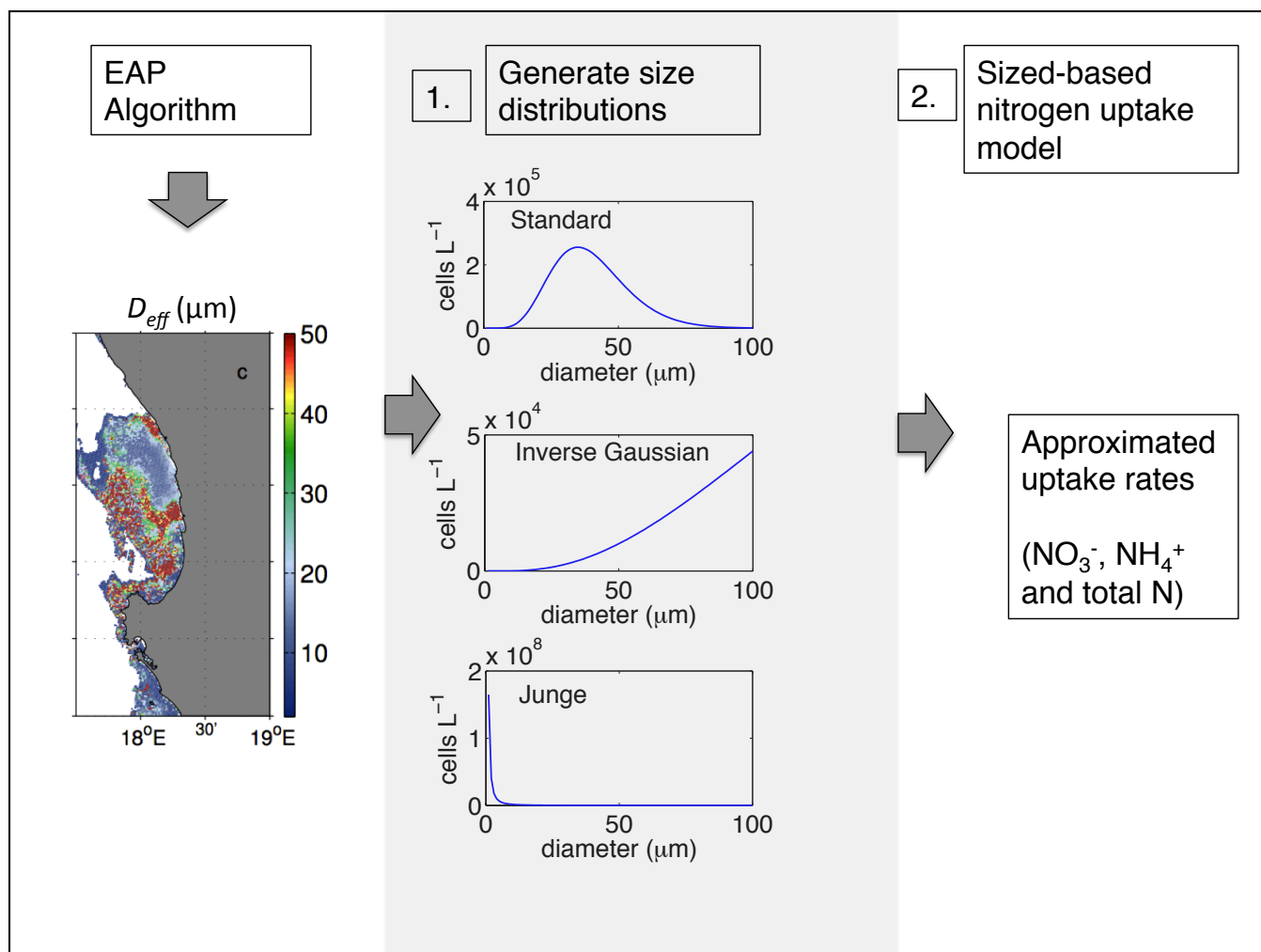


Figure 5.1: Simplified schematic depicting the broad themes of future research, relating to the generation of size spectra from satellite derived products such as effective diameter (D_{eff}) and the improvement and extension of the nitrogen uptake model described in Atkins et al. (2016).

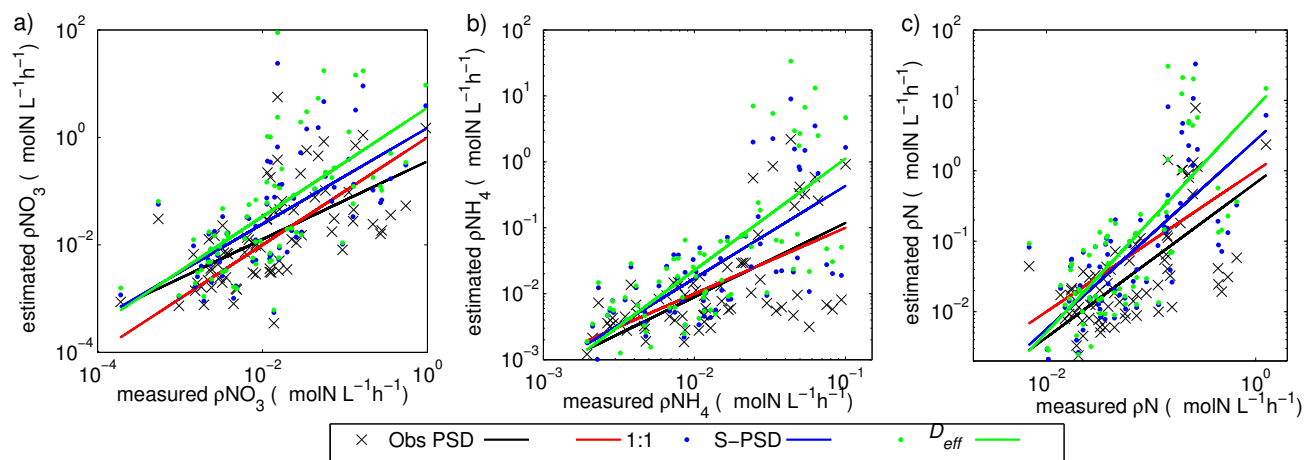


Figure 5.2: Preliminary results of the comparison between the different representations of the size distributions in the calculations of uptake rates for a) NO_3^- , b) NH_4^+ and c) total N. The 'obs PSD' (in black) uses the measured size distributions as described in chapter 4. 'S-PSD' (in blue) is a standard distribution generated using the calculated effective diameter and effective variance (as outlined in Fig. 5.1 and described in Bernard et al., 2007). The ' D_{eff} ' (in green) uses simply the D_{eff} value and assumes total volume (as a proxy of biomass) is found within the single size class. See Appendix I for methods used and Table A1 for resultant values.

- 2446 1. **The size spectra:** Quantifying the size spectra is of use in studying the flow of energy
 2447 in ecological systems. Many studies use the slope and intercept of size spectra (e.g.
 2448 Canales et al., 2015) but the effective diameter (derived from satellite data) and effec-
 2449 tive variance are attractive alternatives (e.g. Arduini et al., 2005). Beyond simply feeding
 2450 into what is depicted in Figure. 5.1, satellite-derived size spectra may be used to ex-
 2451 plore ecological patterns in phytoplankton dynamics at scales not available from *in situ*
 2452 measurements. It was recognised in this thesis and in other studies (e.g. Acevedo-
 2453 Trejos et al., 2016) that describing multi-modality in size distributions is a challenge in
 2454 size-based quantifications of biomass and biogeochemistry. How can we effectively ac-
 2455 count for multi-modality? Further work is required to estimate the errors associated with
 2456 using the generated size spectra in an ecological context.
- 2457 2. **Extension of the size-dependent nutrient uptake model:** The adequate representa-
 2458 tions of nutrient uptake remains a popular theme in the literature (e.g. Edwards et al.,
 2459 2015; Lindemann et al., 2016). The model presented in this thesis showed a high degree
 2460 of reproducibility of the observed nitrogen uptake rates, but there remains much scope to

2461 improve estimations of NO_3^- uptake. Accounting for an internal quota (Droop, 1973), ap-
2462 plying multi-phasic kinetic parameters (Collos et al., 2005) and the non-linearity in uptake
2463 affinities (Lindemann et al., 2016) may all potentially improve on the model proposed in
2464 this thesis and in Atkins et al. (2016).

2465

References

2466

- 2467 Acevedo-Trejos, E., Brandt, G., and Merico, A. (2015). Mechanisms shaping phytoplankton
2468 community structure and diversity in the ocean. *Nature*, 5:17–20.
- 2469 Acevedo-Trejos, E., Brandt, G., Merico, A., and Smith, S. L. (2013). Biogeographical patterns
2470 of phytoplankton community size structure in the oceans. *Global Ecology and Biogeography*,
2471 22(9):1060–1070.
- 2472 Acevedo-Trejos, E., Brandt, G., Smith, S. L., and Merico, A. (2016). PhytoSFDM version 1.0.0:
2473 Phytoplankton Size and Functional Diversity Model. *Geoscientific Model Development Dis-*
2474 *cussions*, (May):1–22.
- 2475 Acevedo-Trejos, E., Brandt, G., Steinacher, M., and Merico, A. (2014). A glimpse into the future
2476 composition of marine phytoplankton communities. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 1(July):1–12.
- 2477 Agawin, N. S. R., Duarte, C. M., and Agustí, S. (2000). Nutrient and temperature control of the
2478 contribution of picoplankton to phytoplankton biomass and production. 45(3):591–600.
- 2479 Aksnes, D. and Egge, J. (1991). A theoretical model for nutrient uptake in phytoplankton. *Marine*
2480 *Ecology Progress Series*, 70:65–72.
- 2481 Aksnes, D. L. and Cao, F. J. (2011). Inherent and apparent traits in microbial nutrient uptake.
2482 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 440:41–51.
- 2483 Alexandrov, M. D. and Lacis, A. A. (2000). A new three-parameter cloud / aerosol particle size
2484 distribution based on the generalized inverse Gaussian density function. 116:153–165.

- 2485 Allen, J. I. and Fulton, E. (2010). Top-down, bottom-up or middle-out? Avoiding extraneous
2486 detail and over-generality in marine ecosystem models. *Progress in Oceanography*, 84(1-
2487 2):129–133.
- 2488 Alvain, S., Loisel, H., and Dessailly, D. (2012). Theoretical analysis of ocean color radiances
2489 anomalies and implications for phytoplankton groups detection in case 1 waters. *Optics Ex-
2490 press*, 20(2):1070–1083.
- 2491 Alvain, S., Moulin, C., Dandonneau, Y., and Breon, F. (2005). Remote sensing of phytoplankton
2492 groups in case 1 waters from global SeaWiFS imagery. *Deep Sea Research*, 52:1989–2004.
- 2493 Alvain, S., Moulin, C., Dandonneau, Y., and Loisel, H. (2008). Seasonal distribution and suc-
2494 cession of dominant phytoplankton groups in the global ocean: A satellite view. *Global Bio-
2495 geochemical Cycles*, 22(3):1–6.
- 2496 Andersen, K. and Beyer, J. (2006). Asymptotic size determines species abundance in the
2497 marine size spectrum. *The American Naturalist*, 168(1):54–61.
- 2498 Anderson, D. M., Cembella, A. D., and Hallegraeff, G. M. (2012). Progress in Understanding
2499 Harmful Algal Blooms: Paradigm Shifts and New Technologies for Research, Monitoring, and
2500 Management. *Annual Review of Marine Science*, 4(1):143–176.
- 2501 Anderson, D. M., Glibert, P. M., and Burkholder, J. M. (2002). Harmful algal blooms and eu-
2502 trophication: nutrient sources, compositions, and consequences. *Estuaries*, 25(4):704–726.
- 2503 Anderson, T. R. (2005). Plankton functional type modelling: running before we can walk?
2504 *Journal of Plankton Research*, 27(3).
- 2505 Arduini, R., Minnis, P., Smith Jnr, W., Ayers, J., Khaiyer, M., and Heck, P. (2005). Sensitivity of
2506 satellite-retrieved cloud properties to the effective variance of cloud droplet size distribution.
2507 In *Fifteenth ARM Science Team Meeting Proceedings*, pages 1–13, Daytona Beach, Florida.
- 2508 Armstrong, R. (2006). Optimality-based modeling of nitrogen allocation and photoacclimation in

- 2509 photosynthesis. *Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*, 53(5-7):513–
2510 531.
- 2511 Arteaga, L., Pahlow, M., and Oeschies, A. (2014). Global patterns of phytoplankton nutrient and
2512 light colimitation inferred from an optimality-based model. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*,
2513 28(7):648–661.
- 2514 Atkins, J. F., Moloney, C. L., Probyn, T. A., and Bernard, S. (2016). *In situ* measurements
2515 and model estimates of NO₃ and NH₄ uptake by different phytoplankton size fractions in the
2516 Southern Benguela upwelling system. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 3(3):1–11.
- 2517 Ault, T. (2000). Vertical migration by the marine dinoflagellate *Prorocentrum triestinum* max-
2518 imises photosynthetic yield. *Oecologia*, 125(4):466–475.
- 2519 Aumont, O., Ethé, C., Tagliabue, A., Bopp, L., and Gehlen, M. (2015). PISCES v2: an ocean
2520 biogeochemical model for carbon and ecosystem studies. *Geoscientific Model Development*
2521 *Discussions*, 8(2):1375–1509.
- 2522 Azam, F. and Malfatti, F. (2007). Microbial structuring of marine ecosystems. *Nature reviews*.
2523 *Microbiology*, 5(10):782–791.
- 2524 Baird, M. E. and Suthers, I. M. (2007). A size-resolved pelagic ecosystem model. *Ecological*
2525 *Modelling*, 203(3-4):185–203.
- 2526 Bakun, A. (1990). Global climate change and intensification of coastal ocean upwelling. *Science*
2527 *(New York, N.Y.)*, 247(4939):198–201.
- 2528 Bakun, A., Black, B., Bograd, S. J., García-Reyes, M., Miller, A. J., Rykaczewski, R. R., and
2529 Sydeman, W. J. (2015). Anticipated Effects of Climate Change on Coastal Upwelling Ecosys-
2530 tems. *Current Climate Change Reports*, 1:85–93.
- 2531 Banas, N. S. (2011). Adding complex trophic interactions to a size-spectral plankton model:
2532 Emergent diversity patterns and limits on predictability. *Ecological Modelling*, 222(15):2663–
2533 2675.

- 2534 Banse, K. (1975). Rates of growth, respiration and photosynthesis as related to cell size. A
2535 review. *Journal of Phycology*, pages 135–141.
- 2536 Barnes, C., Irigoien, X., De Oliveira, J., Maxwell, D., and Jennings, S. (2011). Predicting marine
2537 phytoplankton community size structure from empirical relationships with remotely sensed
2538 variables. *Journal of Plankton Research*, 33(1):13–24.
- 2539 Barton, A. D., Dutkiewicz, S., Flierl, G., Bragg, J., and Follows, M. J. (2010). Patterns of diversity
2540 in marine phytoplankton. *Science (New York, N.Y.)*, 327(5972):1509–11.
- 2541 Barton, A. D., Pershing, A. J., Litchman, E., Record, N. R., Edwards, K. F., Finkel, Z. V., Kiørboe,
2542 T., and Ward, B. a. (2013). The biogeography of marine plankton traits. *Ecology Letters*,
2543 16(4):522–534.
- 2544 Behrenfeld, M. J., Westberry, T. K., Boss, E. S., O'Malley, R. T., Siegel, D. A., Wiggert, J. D.,
2545 Franz, B. a., McClain, C. R., Feldman, G. C., Doney, S. C., Moore, J. K., Dall'Olmo, G.,
2546 Milligan, a. J., Lima, I., and Mahowald, N. (2009). Satellite-detected fluorescence reveals
2547 global physiology of ocean phytoplankton. *Biogeosciences*, 6(5):779–794.
- 2548 Behrenfeld, M. J., Worthington, K., Sherrell, R. M., Chavez, F. P., Strutton, P., McPhaden, M.,
2549 and Shea, D. M. (2006). Controls on tropical Pacific Ocean productivity revealed through
2550 nutrient stress diagnostics. *Nature*, 442(7106):1025–8.
- 2551 Berg, G. M., Balode, M., Purina, I., Bekere, S., Béchemin, C., and Maestrini, S. Y. (2003).
2552 Plankton community composition in relation to availability and uptake of oxidized and reduced
2553 nitrogen. *Aquatic Microbial Ecology*, 30(3):263–274.
- 2554 Berg, G. M., Glibert, P. M., Lomas, M. W., and Burford, M. A. (1997). Organic nitrogen uptake
2555 and growth by the chrysophyte *Aureococcus anophagefferens* during a brown tide event.
2556 *Marine Biology*, 129(2):377–387.
- 2557 Bernard, S. (2005). The Bio-Optical Detection of Harmful Algal Blooms in the Department of
2558 Oceanography. (August).

- 2559 Bernard, S., Kudela, R. M., Franks, P., Fennel, W., Kemp, A., Fawcett, A., and Pitcher, G. C.
2560 (2006). The requirements for forecasting harmful algal blooms in the Benguela. In *Large*
2561 *Marine Ecosystems*, volume 14, chapter 14, pages 273–294.
- 2562 Bernard, S., Probyn, T. A., and Quirantes, A. (2009). Simulating the optical properties of
2563 phytoplankton cells using a two-layered spherical geometry. *Biogeosciences Discussions*,
2564 6(1):1497–1563.
- 2565 Bernard, S., Shillington, F., and Probyn, T. A. (2007). The use of equivalent size distributions of
2566 natural phytoplankton assemblages for optical modeling. *Optics express*, 15(5):1995–2007.
- 2567 Bonachela, J. A., Raghib, M., and Levin, S. A. (2011). Dynamic model of flexible phytoplankton
2568 nutrient uptake. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 108(51):20633–20638.
- 2569 Bopp, L., Aumont, O., Cadule, P., Alvain, S., and Gehlen, M. (2005). Response of diatoms
2570 distribution to global warming and potential implications: A global model study. *Geophysical*
2571 *Research Letters*, 32(May):L19606.
- 2572 Boyd, C. M. and Johnson, G. (1995). Precision of size determination of resistive electronic
2573 counters. *Journal of Plankton Research*, 17:41–58.
- 2574 Brewin, R. J., Hardman-Mountford, N. J., Lavender, S. J., Raitsos, D. E., Hirata, T., Uitz, J.,
2575 Devred, E., Bricaud, A., Ciotti, A., and Gentili, B. (2011). An intercomparison of bio-optical
2576 techniques for detecting dominant phytoplankton size class from satellite remote sensing.
2577 *Remote Sensing of Environment*, 115(2):325–339.
- 2578 Brewin, R. J. W., Lavender, S. J., and Hardman-Mountford, N. J. (2010). Mapping size specific
2579 phytoplankton primary production on a global scale. *Journal of Maps*, 6(1):448–462.
- 2580 Bronk, D. A. and Glibert, P. M. (1993). Application of I5N tracer method to the study of dissolved
2581 organic nitrogen uptake during spring and summer in Chesapeake Bay. *Marine Biology*,
2582 115:501–508.

- 2583 Bronk, D. A., Sanderson, M. P., Mulholland, M. R., Heil, C. A., and Neil, J. M. (2004). Organic
2584 and inorganic nitrogen uptake kinetics in field populations dominated by *Karenia brevis*. In
2585 Steidinger, K.A., Landsberg, J.J., Tomas, C.R. and Vargo, G., editor, *Harmful Algae*, vol-
2586 ume 1, pages 3–5. Florida Fish and Wildlife Conservation Commission, Florida Institute of
2587 Oceanography, and Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission of UNESCO.
- 2588 Brown, C. W. and Podestá, G. P. (1997). Remote sensing of coccolithophore blooms in the
2589 Western South atlantic ocean. *Remote Sensing of Environment*, 60(1):83–91.
- 2590 Brown, J. H., Gillooly, J. F., Allen, A. P., Savage, V. M., and West, G. B. (2004). Toward a
2591 metabolic theory of ecology. *Ecology*, 85(7):1771–1789.
- 2592 Brown, P. and Hutchings, L. (1987). The development and decline of phytoplankton blooms in
2593 the southern Benguela upwelling system. 2. Nutrient relationships. *South African Journal of*
2594 *Science*, 5(1):393–409.
- 2595 Bruggeman, J. and Kooijman, S. A. L. M. (2007). A biodiversity-inspired approach to aquatic
2596 ecosystem modeling. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 52(4):1533–1544.
- 2597 Bryan, A. K., Engler, A., Gulati, A., and Manalis, S. R. (2012). Continuous and long-term volume
2598 measurements with a commercial coulter counter. *PLoS ONE*, 7(1):1–8.
- 2599 Bulit, C., Díaz-Ávalos, C., and Montagnes, D. J. S. (2004). Assessing spatial and temporal
2600 patchiness of the autotrophic ciliate *Myrionecta rubra*: A case study in a coastal lagoon.
2601 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 268:55–67.
- 2602 Burkholder, J. M., Glibert, P. M., and Skelton, H. M. (2008). Mixotrophy , a major mode of
2603 nutrition for harmful algal species in eutrophic waters. 8:77–93.
- 2604 Bury, S. J., Boyd, P. W., Preston, T., Savidge, G., and Owens, N. J. (2001). Size fractionated
2605 primary production and nitrogen uptake during a North Atlantic phytoplankton bloom. Impli-
2606 cations for carbon export estimates. *Deep-Sea Research*, 48:680–720.

- 2607 Canales, T. M., Law, R., and Blanchard, J. L. (2015). Shifts in plankton size-spectra modulate
2608 growth and coexistence of anchovy and sardine in upwelling systems. *Canadian Journal of*
2609 *Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, 621(October 2015):611–621.
- 2610 Carvalho, G., Minnet, P., Fleming, L., Banzon, V. T., and Baringer, W. (2010). Satellite remote
2611 sensing of harmful algal blooms: A new multi-algorithm method for detecting the Florida Red
2612 Tide (*Karenia brevis*). *Harmful Algae*, 9(5):440–448.
- 2613 Cavagna, A. J., Elskens, M., Griffiths, F. B., Fripiat, F., Jacquet, S. H. M., Westwood, K. J.,
2614 and Dehairs, F. (2011). Contrasting regimes of production and potential for carbon export in
2615 the Sub-Antarctic and Polar Frontal Zones south of Tasmania. *Deep-Sea Research Part II:*
2616 *Topical Studies in Oceanography*, 58(21-22):2235–2247.
- 2617 Cermeño, P., Marañón, E., Harbour, D., and Harris, R. P. (2006). Invariant scaling of phy-
2618 toplankton abundance and cell size in contrasting marine environments. *Ecology Letters*,
2619 9(11):1210–1215.
- 2620 Cerucci, M., Jalgama, G. K., and Ambrose, R. B. (2010). Comparison of the Monod and
2621 Droop Methods for Dynamic Water Quality Simulations. *Journal of Environmental Engineer-*
2622 *ing*, 136(10):1009–1019.
- 2623 Chakraborty, S. and Feudel, U. (2014). Harmful algal blooms: Combining excitability and com-
2624 petition. *Theoretical Ecology*, 7(3):221–237.
- 2625 Chapin, F. (1997). Biotic control over the functioning of ecosystems. *Science*, 277:500–504.
- 2626 Chen, L., Ma, J., Huang, Y., Dai, M., and Li, X. (2015). Optimization of a colorimetric method to
2627 determine trace urea in seawater. *Limnology and Oceanography: Methods*, 13(6):303–311.
- 2628 Chisholm, S. W. (1992). Phytoplankton Size. In *Primary Productivity and Biogeochemical*
2629 *Cycles in the Sea*, pages 213–237.
- 2630 Ciotti, A. M. and Bricaud, A. (2006). Retrievals of a size parameter for phytoplankton and
2631 spectral light absorption by colored detrital matter from water-leaving radiances at SeaWiFS

- 2632 channels in a continental shelf region off Brazil. *Limnology and Oceanography: Methods*,
2633 4:237–253.
- 2634 Ciotti, A. M., Lewis, M. R., and Cullen, J. J. (2002). Assessment of the relationships between
2635 dominant cell size in natural phytoplankton communities and the spectral shape of the ab-
2636 sorption coefficient. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 47(2):404–417.
- 2637 Cloern, J. E., Cole, B. E., and Hager, W. (1994). Notes on a *Mesodinium rubrum* red tide in San
2638 Francisco Bay (California, USA). *Journal of Plankton Research*, 16:1269–1276.
- 2639 Cochlan, W. P. and Bronk, D. A. (2001). Nitrogen uptake kinetics in the Ross Sea, Antarctica.
2640 *Deep-Sea Research Part II-Topical Studies in Oceanography*, 48(19-20):4127–4153.
- 2641 Cochlan, W. P., Herndon, J., and Kudela, R. M. (2008). Inorganic and organic nitrogen up-
2642 take by the toxigenic diatom *Pseudo-nitzschia australis* (Bacillariophyceae). *Harmful Algae*,
2643 8(1):111–118.
- 2644 Cockcroft, A., Schoeman, D. S., Pitcher, G. C., Bailey, G. C., and Van Zyl, D. L. (1998). A
2645 mass stranding, or walkout, of West Coast Rock Lobster *Jasus lalandii* in Elands Bay, South
2646 Africa. Causes, results and implications. In Von Kaupel Klein, J. C. and Schram, F. R., editor,
2647 *Crustacean Issues*, volume 12, pages 673–688.
- 2648 Collos, Y. (1980). Transient situations in nitrate assimilation by marine diatoms. 1. Changes in
2649 uptake parameters during nitrogen starvation. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 25(6):1075–
2650 1081.
- 2651 Collos, Y. (1992). Nitrogen budgets and dissolved organic matter cycling. *Marine Ecology*
2652 *Progress Series*, 90(2):201–206.
- 2653 Collos, Y., Gagne, C., Laabir, M., Vaquer, A., Cecchi, P., and Souchu, P. (2004). Nitrogenous
2654 nutrition of *Alexandrium Catenella* (Dinophyceae) in cultures and in Thau Lagoon, Southern
2655 France. *Journal of Phycology*, 40(1):96–103.

- 2656 Collos, Y., Siddiqi, M., Wang, M., Glass, D., and Harrison, P. (1992). Nitrate uptake kinetics by
2657 two marine diatoms using the radioactive tracer ^{13}N . *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology*
2658 *and Ecology*, 163(2):251–260.
- 2659 Collos, Y. and Slawyk, G. (1976). Significance of cellular nitrate content in natural populations
2660 of marine phytoplankton growing in shipboard cultures. *Marine Biology*, 34(1):27–32.
- 2661 Collos, Y., Vaquer, a., Bibent, B., Slawyk, G., Garcia, N., and Souchu, P. (1997). Variability in
2662 Nitrate Uptake Kinetics of Phytoplankton Communities in a Mediterranean Coastal Lagoon.
2663 *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science*, 44(3):369–375.
- 2664 Collos, Y., Vaquer, A., Bibent, B., Souchu, P., Slawyk, G., and Garcia, N. (2003). Response
2665 of coastal phytoplankton to ammonium and nitrate pulses: Seasonal variations of nitrogen
2666 uptake and regeneration. *Aquatic Ecology*, 37(3):227–236.
- 2667 Collos, Y., Vaquer, A., Laabir, M., Abadie, E., Laugier, T., Pastoureaud, A., and Souchu, P.
2668 (2007). Contribution of several nitrogen sources to growth of *Alexandrium catenella* during
2669 blooms in Thau lagoon, southern France. *Harmful Algae*, 6(6):781–789.
- 2670 Collos, Y., Vaquer, A., and Souchu, P. (2005). Acclimation of nitrate uptake by phytoplankton to
2671 high substrate levels. *Journal of Phycology*, 41(3):466–478.
- 2672 Crawford, D. (1989). *Mesodinium rubrum*: the phytoplankter that wasn't . *Marine Ecology*
2673 *Progress Series*, 58(1988):161–174.
- 2674 Crichton, M., Hutchings, L., Lamont, T., and Jarre, a. (2013). From physics to phytoplank-
2675 ton: prediction of dominant cell size in St Helena Bay in the Southern Benguela. *Journal of*
2676 *Plankton Research*, 35(3):526–541.
- 2677 Cullen, J., Doolittle, W. F., Levin, S., and Li, W. (2007). Patterns and Prediction in Microbial
2678 Oceanography. *Oceanography*, 20(2):34–46.
- 2679 Cury, P., Bakun, A., Crawford, R., Jarre, A., Quiñones, R., Shannon, L., and Verheye, H. (2000).

- 2680 Small pelagics in upwelling systems: patterns of interaction and structural changes in wasp
2681 waist ecosystems. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*, 57(3):603–618.
- 2682 Dauchez, S., Legendre, L., Fortier, L., Levasseur, M., De, D., and Laval, U. (1996). Nitrate
2683 uptake by size-fractionated phytoplankton on the Scotian Shelf (Northwest Atlantic). Spatial
2684 and temporal variability. *Journal of Plankton Research*, 18(4):577–595.
- 2685 Demarcq, H., Barlow, R., and Hutchings, L. (2007). Application of a chlorophyll index derived
2686 from satellite data to investigate the variability of phytoplankton in the Benguela ecosystem.
2687 *African Journal of Marine Science*, 29(2):271–282.
- 2688 Diaz, H. F. and Bradley, R. S. (2005). *The Hadley Circulations: Present, Past and Future*.
2689 Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- 2690 Doney, S., Lima, I., Moore, J., Lindsay, K., Behrenfeld, M., Westberry, T., Mahowald, N., Glover,
2691 D., and Takahashi, T. (2009). Skill metrics for confronting global upper ocean ecosystem-
2692 biogeochemistry models against field and remote sensing data. *Journal of Marine Systems*,
2693 76:95–112.
- 2694 Dortch, Q. (1990). The interaction between ammonium and nitrate uptake in phytoplankton.
2695 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*.
- 2696 Dortch, Q., Clayton, J. R., Thoresen, S. S., and Ahmed, S. I. (1984). Species differences in
2697 accumulation of nitrogen pools in phytoplankton. *Marine Biology*, 81(3):237–250.
- 2698 Dortch, Q. and Conway, H. (1984). Interactions between nitrate and ammonium uptake: varia-
2699 tion with growth rate, nitrogen source and species. *Marine Biology*, 79:151–164.
- 2700 Douding, L. and Goebel, J. (2001). Five Red Tide Species in Genus *Prorocentrum* Including the
2701 Description of *Prorocentrum Donghaiense*. *Chinese Journal of Oceanology and Limnology*,
2702 19(4):337–344.
- 2703 Droop, M. R. (1973). Some Thoughts on Nutrient Limitation in Algae. *Journal of Phycology*,
2704 9(3):264–272.

- 2705 Droop, M. R. (1974). The Nutrient Status of Algal Cells in Continuous Culture. *Journal of the*
2706 *Marine Biological Association of the UK*, 54:825–855.
- 2707 Dugdale, R. (1967). Limitation in the Sea: Dynamics, identification, and significance. *Limnology*
2708 *and Oceanography*, 12(4):685–695.
- 2709 Dugdale, R. and Goering, J. (1967). Uptake of new and regenerated forms of nitrogen in primary
2710 productivity. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 12:196–206.
- 2711 Dugdale, R. C. and Wilkerson, F. P. (1986). The use of ¹⁵N to measure nitrogen uptake in
2712 eutrophic ocean. Experimental considerations. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 31(4):673–
2713 689.
- 2714 Dugdale, R. C., Wilkerson, F. P., Hogue, V. E., and Marchi, A. (2006). Nutrient controls on new
2715 production in the Bodega Bay, California, coastal upwelling plume. *Deep-Sea Research Part*
2716 *II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*, 53(25-26):3049–3062.
- 2717 Dugdale, R. C., Wilkerson, F. P., Hogue, V. E., and Marchi, A. (2007). The role of ammonium
2718 and nitrate in spring bloom development in San Francisco Bay. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf*
2719 *Science*, 73(1-2):17–29.
- 2720 Dugdale, R. C., Wilkerson, F. P., Morel, A., and Physique, L. D. (1990). Realization of new
2721 production in coastal upwelling: A means to compare relative performance areas. 35(4):822–
2722 829.
- 2723 Dutkiewicz, S., Follows, M. J., and Bragg, J. G. (2009). Modeling the coupling of ocean ecology
2724 and biogeochemistry. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, 23(4):1–15.
- 2725 Dutkiewicz, S., Jahn, O., Ward, B., Follows, M., Hickman, A., Follet, C., and Taniguchi, D.
2726 (2016). Modeling diverse phytoplankton communities. In *Colour and Light in the Ocean from*
2727 *Earth Observation (CLEO) Relevance and Applications Products from Space and Perspec-*
2728 *tives from Models*, page Presentation.

- 2729 Edwards, K., Klausmeier, C., and Litchman, E. (2015). Nutrient utilization traits of phytoplank-
2730 ton. *Ecology*, 96(8):2311–2311.
- 2731 Edwards, K. F., Litchman, E., and Klausmeier, C. (2013). Functional traits explain phytoplank-
2732 ton community structure and seasonal dynamics in a marine ecosystem. *Ecology Letters*,
2733 16(1):56–63.
- 2734 Edwards, K. F., Thomas, M. K., Klausmeier, C. A., and Litchman, E. (2012). Allometric scaling
2735 and taxonomic variation in nutrient utilization traits and maximum growth rate of phytoplank-
2736 ton. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 57(2):554–566.
- 2737 Egge, J. K. and Aksnes, D. L. (1992). Silicate as regulating nutrient in phytoplankton competi-
2738 tion. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 83(2-3):281–289.
- 2739 Eppley, R. and Peterson, B. J. (1979). Particulate organic matter flux and planktonic new pro-
2740 duction in the deep ocean. *Nature*, 282:677–680.
- 2741 Eppley, R. W., Carlucci, A. F., Kiefer, D., McCarthy, J. J., Venrick, E., and Williams, P. M. (1971).
2742 Phytoplankton growth and composition in shipboard cultures supplied with nitrate, ammo-
2743 nium, or urea as the nitrogen source. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 16(5):741–751.
- 2744 Eppley, R. W. and Rogers, J. N. (1970). Inorganic nitrogen assimilation of *Ditylum brightwelli*, a
2745 marine plankton diatom. *J. Phycol.*, 6(4):344–351.
- 2746 Eppley, R. W., Rogers, J. N., and McCarthy, J. J. (1969). Half-saturation constants for uptake of
2747 nitrate and ammonium by marine phytoplankton. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 14(6):912–
2748 920.
- 2749 Evers-King, H. (2014). *Phytoplankton community structure determined through remote sensing
2750 and in situ optical measurements*. PhD thesis, University of Cape Town.
- 2751 Evers-King, H., Bernard, S., Robertson Lain, L., and Probyn, T. A. (2014). Sensitivity in re-
2752 flectance attributed to phytoplankton cell size: forward and inverse modelling approaches.
2753 *Optics Express*, 22(10):11536–11551.

- 2754 Falkowski, P. G., Katz, M. E., Knoll, A. H., Quigg, A., Raven, J. A., Schofield, O., and Taylor, F.
2755 J. R. (2004). The evolution of modern eukaryotic phytoplankton. *Science (New York, N.Y.)*,
2756 305(5682):354–360.
- 2757 Falkowski, P. G. and Owens, T. G. (1978). Effects of light-intensity on photosynthesis and dark
2758 respiration in six species of marine phytoplankton. *Marine Biology*, 45(4):289–295.
- 2759 Fasham, M., Ducklow, H., and McKelvie, S. (1990). A nitrogen-based model of plankton dy-
2760 namics in the oceanic mixed layer. *Journal of Marine Research*, 48(3):491–639.
- 2761 Fawcett, A., Pitcher, G. C., Bernard, S., Cembella, A. D., and Kudela, R. M. (2007). Contrast-
2762 ing wind patterns and toxigenic phytoplankton in the southern Benguela upwelling system.
2763 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 348:19–31.
- 2764 Fenchel, T. and Finlay, B. J. (1983). Respiration rates in heterotrophic, free living protozoa.
2765 *Microbial Ecology*, 9(2):99–122.
- 2766 Field, Behrenfeld, M., Randerson, J., and Falkowski, P. (1998). Primary Production of the
2767 Biosphere: Integrating Terrestrial and Oceanic Components. *Science*, 281(5374):237–240.
- 2768 Finkel, Z. V., Beardall, J., Flynn, K. J., Quigg, A., Rees, T. A. V., and Raven, J. (2010). Phy-
2769 toplankton in a changing world: Cell size and elemental stoichiometry. *Journal of Plankton*
2770 *Research*, 32(1):119–137.
- 2771 Finkel, Z. V., Falkowski, P. G., and Knoll, A. (2007). Does phytoplankton cell size matter? The
2772 evolution of modern marine food webs. In *Evolution of Aquatic Photoautotrophs*, pages 333–
2773 350. Academic press, San Diego.
- 2774 Finlay, B. and Uhlig, G. (1981). Calorific and carbon values of marine and freshwater protozoa.
2775 *Helgolander meeresuntersuchungen*, 34:401–412.
- 2776 Follows, M., Dutkiewicz, S., Grant, S., and Chisholm, S. (2007). Emergent biogeography of
2777 microbial communities in a model ocean. *Science*, 315(5820):1843–1846.

- 2778 Follows, M. J. and Dutkiewicz, S. (2011). Modeling diverse communities of marine microbes.
2779 *Annual review of marine science*, 3:427–451.
- 2780 Franks, P. J. S. (2009). Planktonic ecosystem models: Perplexing parameterizations and a
2781 failure to fail. *Journal of Plankton Research*, 31(11):1299–1306.
- 2782 Furnas, M. J. (1983). Nitrogen dynamics in lower Narragansett Bay, Rhode Island. I. Up-
2783 take by size-fractionated phytoplankton populations. *Journal of Plankton Research* 5:677-692,
2784 5(5):657–676.
- 2785 Gandhi, N., Ramesh, R., Srivastava, R., Sheshshayee, M. S., Dwivedi, R. M., and Raman, M.
2786 (2010). Nitrogen Uptake Rates during Spring in the NE Arabian Sea. *International Journal of*
2787 *Oceanography*, 2010:1–10.
- 2788 García-Reyes, M., Sydeman, W. J., Schoeman, D. S., Rykaczewski, R. R., Black, B. A., Smit,
2789 A. J., and Bograd, S. J. (2015). Under Pressure: Climate Change, Upwelling, and Eastern
2790 Boundary Upwelling Ecosystems. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 2(December):1–10.
- 2791 Geider, R. and La Roche, J. (2002). Redfield revisited: variability of C:N:P in marine microalgae
2792 and its biochemical basis. *European Journal of Phycology*, 37(1):1–17.
- 2793 GEOHAB (2001). Global Ecology and Oceanography of Harmful Algal Blooms, Science Plan.
2794 In G. Pitcher, T. Moita, V. Trainer, R. Kudela, F. Figuierras and T.A. Probyn, editor, *GEOHAB*
2795 *Core Research Project: HABs in Upwelling Systems*,, page 87. IOC and SCOR, Paris and
2796 Baltimore.
- 2797 Gilpin, L. C., Davidson, K., and Roberts, E. (2004). The influence of changes in nitrogen: Silicon
2798 ratios on diatom growth dynamics. *Journal of Sea Research*, 51(1):21–35.
- 2799 Glibert, P. (2012). Ecological stoichiometry and its implications for aquatic ecosystem sustain-
2800 ability. *Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability*, 4(3):272–277.
- 2801 Glibert, P., Anderson, D., Gentien, P., Granéli, E., and Sellner, K. (2005). The Global, Complex
2802 Phenomena of Harmful Algal Blooms. *Oceanography*, 18(2):136–147.

- 2803 Glibert, P. and Garside, C. (1992). Diel variability in nitrogenous nutrient uptake by phytoplank-
2804 ton in the Chesapeake Bay plume. *Journal of Plankton Research*, 14(2):271–288.
- 2805 Glibert, P., Kana, T., and Brown, K. (2013). From limitation to excess: the consequences of
2806 substrate excess and stoichiometry for phytoplankton physiology, trophodynamics and bio-
2807 geochemistry, and the implications for modeling. *Journal of Marine Systems*, 125:14–28.
- 2808 Glibert, P. M. (2016). Margalef revisited: A new phytoplankton mandala incorporating twelve
2809 dimensions, including nutritional physiology. *Harmful Algae*, 55(May):25–30.
- 2810 Glibert, P. M., Garside, C., Fuhrman, J. A., and Roman, M. R. (1991). Dependent coupling of
2811 inorganic and organic nitrogen uptake and regeneration in the plume of the Chesapeake Bay
2812 estuary and its regulation by large heterotrophs. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 36(5):895–
2813 909.
- 2814 Glibert, P. M. and Goldman, J. C. (1981). Rapid ammonium uptake by marine phytoplankton.
2815 *marine Biology letters*, 2:25–31.
- 2816 Glibert, P. M., Harrison, J., Heil, C., and Seitzinger, S. (2006). Escalating worldwide use of urea
2817 - A global change contributing to coastal eutrophication. *Biogeochemistry*, 77(3):441–463.
- 2818 Glibert, P. M., Lipschultz, F., McCarthy, J. J., and Altabet, M. A. (1982). Isotope dilution models
2819 of uptake and remineralization of ammonium by marine plankton. *Limnology and Oceanog-
2820 raphy*, 27(4):639–650.
- 2821 Glibert, P. M. and McCarthy, J. J. (1984). Uptake and assimilation of ammonium and nitrate
2822 by phytoplankton: Indices of nutritional status for natural assemblages. *Journal of Plankton
2823 Research*, 6(4):677–697.
- 2824 Glibert, P. M., Wilkerson, F. P., Dugdale, R. C., Parker, A. E., Alexander, J., Blaser, S., and
2825 Murasko, S. (2014). Phytoplankton communities from San Francisco Bay Delta respond differ-
2826 ently to oxidized and reduced nitrogen substrates even under conditions that would otherwise
2827 suggest nitrogen sufficiency. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 1(July):1–16.

- 2828 Glibert, P. M., Wilkerson, F. P., Dugdale, R. C., Raven, J. A., Dupont, C. L., Leavitt, P. R.,
2829 Parker, A. E., Burkholder, J. M., and Kana, T. M. (2016). Pluses and minuses of ammo-
2830 nium and nitrate uptake and assimilation by phytoplankton and implications for productivity
2831 and community composition, with emphasis on nitrogen-enriched conditions. *Limnology and*
2832 *Oceanography*, 61(1):165–197.
- 2833 Gocke, K., Dawson, R., and Liebezit, G. (1981). Availability of dissolved free glucose to het-
2834 erotrophic micro-organisms. *Marine Biology*, 62:209–216.
- 2835 Grasshoff, K., Ehrardt, M. and Kremling, K. (1983). *Methods of seawater analysis*. John Wiley
2836 and Sons.
- 2837 Gregg, W. W., Ginoux, P., Schopf, P. S., and Casey, N. W. (2003). Phytoplankton and iron:
2838 Validation of a global three-dimensional ocean biogeochemical model. *Deep-Sea Research*
2839 *Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*, 50(22-26):3143–3169.
- 2840 Grover, J. P. (1991). Resource Competition in a Variable Environment: Phytoplankton Growing
2841 According to the Variable-Internal-Stores Model. *The American Naturalist*, 138(4):811.
- 2842 Gruber, N. (2008). The marine nitrogen cycle: Overview and Challenges. In Capone, Douglas
2843 G., Bronk, D.A., Mulholland, M., and Carpenter, E., editors, *Nitrogen in the Marine Environ-*
2844 *ment.*, chapter 1, pages 1–43. Elsevier, Burlington.
- 2845 Hallegraeff, G. M. (1993). A review of harmful algal blooms and their apparent global increase.
2846 *Phycologia*, 32(2):79–99.
- 2847 Hansen, P. J. and Fenchel, T. (2006). The bloom forming symbiont *Mesodinium rubrum* har-
2848 bours a single permanent endosymbiont. *Marine Biology Research*, 2:169–177.
- 2849 Harris, G. P. (1980). Temporal and Spatial Scales in Phytoplankton Ecology. Mechanisms,
2850 Methods, Models, and Management. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*,
2851 37(5):877–900.

- 2852 Harrison, W. (1990). Nitrogen utilization in chlorophyll and primary productivity maximum layers:
2853 an analysis based on the f-ratio . *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 60(1):85–90.
- 2854 Harrison, W., Head, E.J.H., Conover, R., Longhurst, A., and Sameoto, D. (1985). The distri-
2855 bution and metabolism of urea in the eastern Canadian Arctic. *Deep Sea Research Part A*.
2856 *Oceanographic Research Papers*, 32:23–42.
- 2857 Harrison, W. G., Harris, L. R., and Irwin, B. D. (1996). The kinetics of nitrogen utilization in
2858 the oceanic mixed layer: Nitrate and ammonium interactions at nanomolar concentrations.
2859 *Limnology and Oceanography*, 41(1):16–32.
- 2860 Healey, F. (1980). Slope of the monod equation as an indicator of advantage in nutrient compe-
2861 tition. *Microbial Ecology*, 5(4):281–286.
- 2862 Hecky, R., Campbell, P., and Hendzell, L. (1993). The stoichiometry of carbon, nitrogen
2863 and phosphorous in particular matter of lakes and oceans. *Limnology and Oceanography*,
2864 38:709–724.
- 2865 Hein, M., Pedersen, M. F., and Sand Jensen, K. (1995). Size-dependent nitrogen uptake in
2866 micro- and macroalgae. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 118(1-3):247–254.
- 2867 Herfort, L., Peterson, T. D., Campbell, V., Futrell, S., and Zuber, P. (2011). *Myrionecta rubra*
2868 (*Mesodinium rubrum*) bloom initiation in the Columbia River estuary. *Estuarine, Coastal and*
2869 *Shelf Science*, 95(4):440–446.
- 2870 Hibbing, M. E., Fuqua, C., Parsek, M. R., and Peterson, S. B. (2010). Bacterial competition:
2871 surviving and thriving in the microbial jungle. *Nature reviews. Microbiology*, 8(1):15–25.
- 2872 Hirata, T., Aiken, J., Hardman-Mountford, N., Smyth, T., and Barlow, R. (2008). An absorption
2873 model to determine phytoplankton size classes from satellite ocean colour. *Remote Sensing*
2874 *of Environment*, 112(6):3153–3159.
- 2875 Hirata, T., Hardman-Mountford, N. J., Brewin, R. J. W., Aiken, J., Barlow, R., Suzuki, K., Isada,
2876 T., Howell, E., Hashioka, T., Noguchi-Aita, M., and Yamanaka, Y. (2011). Synoptic rela-

- 2877 tionships between surface Chlorophyll-*a* and diagnostic pigments specific to phytoplankton
2878 functional types. *Biogeosciences*, 8(2):311–327.
- 2879 Hoagland, P., Jin, D., Polansky, L., Kirkpatrick, B., Kikpatrick, G., Fleming, L., Reich, A., Watkins,
2880 S., Ullmann, S., and Backer, L. (2009). The costs of respiratory illnesses arising from Florida
2881 Gulf Coast *Karenia brevis* blooms. *Environmental Health Perspective*, 117(8):1239–1243.
- 2882 Horstman, D. (1981). Reported red-water outbreaks and their effects on fauna of the west and
2883 south coasts of South Africa 1959-1980. *Fish.Bull.S.Afr.*, 15:71–88.
- 2884 Howard, M. D. A., Cochlan, W. P., Ladizinsky, N., and Kudela, R. M. (2007). Nitrogenous pref-
2885 erence of toxigenic *Pseudo-nitzschia australis* (Bacillariophyceae) from field and laboratory
2886 experiments. *Harmful Algae*, 6:206–217.
- 2887 Hu, Y. X. and Stamnes, K. (1993). An accurate parameterization of the radiative properties of
2888 water clouds suitable for use in climate models.
- 2889 Hunt, G. L. and McKinnell, S. (2006). Interplay between top-down, bottom-up, and wasp-waist
2890 control in marine ecosystems. *Progress in Oceanography*, 68(2-4):115–124.
- 2891 Hunter, M. D. and Price, P. W. (2012). Playing chutes and ladders: Heterogeneity and the
2892 relative roles of bottom up and top down forces in natural communities. *Ecology*, 73(3):724–
2893 732.
- 2894 Hutchings, L. (1992). Fish harvesting in a variable, productive environment. Searching for rules
2895 or searching for exceptions? *South African Journal of Marine Science*, 12(1):297–318.
- 2896 Hutchings, L., Augustyn, C. J., Cockcroft, A., Van Der Lingen, C., Coetzee, J., Leslie, R. W.,
2897 Tarr, R. J., Oosthuizen, H., Lipinski, M. R., Roberts, M. R., Wilke, C., Crawford, R., Shannon,
2898 L. J., and Mayekiso, M. (2009). Marine fisheries monitoring programmes in South Africa.
2899 *South African Journal of Science*, 105(5-6):182–192.
- 2900 Irigoien, X., Flynn, K. J., and Harris, R. P. (2005). Phytoplankton blooms: A 'loophole' in micro-
2901 zooplankton grazing impact? *Journal of Plankton Research*, 27(4):313–321.

- 2902 Joint, I. and Groom, S. (2000). Estimation of phytoplankton production from space: current
2903 status and future potential of satellite remote sensing. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology
2904 and Ecology*, 250(1-2):233–255.
- 2905 Jonsson, P. and Tiselius, P. (1990). Feeding behaviour, prey detection and capture efficiency of
2906 the copepod *Acartia tonsa* feeding on planktonic ciliates. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*,
2907 60:35–44.
- 2908 Junge, C. (1963). *Air chemistry and radioactivity*. Academic Press, London.
- 2909 Kerr, S. (1974). Theory of size distribution in ecological communities. *Journal of the Fisheries
2910 Board of Canada*, 31(12):1859–1862.
- 2911 Kim, H. (1986). Ecological study of Dinoflagellates responsible for Red Tide 2. The population
2912 growth of *Prorocentrum minimum* (Pav.) Schiller. *The Korean Journal of Phycology*, 1(1):103–
2913 106.
- 2914 Kiørboe, T. (1993). Turbulence, phytoplankton cell size, and the structure of pelagic food webs.
2915 *Advances in Marine Biology*, 29:1–72.
- 2916 Kiørboe, T. (2008). *A mechanistic approach to plankton ecology*, volume 10. Princeton Univer-
2917 sity Press, Princeton.
- 2918 Kishi, M., Kashiwai, M., Ware, M., Megrey, B. A., Eslinger, D. L., Werner, F. E., Noguchi-Aita,
2919 M., Azumaya, T., Fuji, M., Hashimoto, S., Huang, D., Lizumi, H., Ishida, Y., Kang, S., Kan-
2920 takov, G. A., Kimo, H., Komatsu, K., Navrotsky, V. V., Smith, S. L., Tadokoro, K., Tsuda, A.,
2921 Yamamura O., Yamanaka Y., Yokouchi K., Yoshiei N., Zhang J., Zuenko Y. I., and Zvalinsky,
2922 I. (2007). NEMURO a lower trophic level model for the North Pacific marine ecosystem.
2923 *Ecological Modelling*, 202:12–25.
- 2924 Kokkinakis, S. and Wheeler, P. (1987). Nitrogen uptake and phytoplankton growth in coastal
2925 upwelling regions. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 32(5):1112–1123.

- 2926 Koroleff, F. (1983). Determination of urea. In Grasshoff, K., Ehrhardt, E., Kremling, K., editor,
2927 *Methods of seawater analysis*, pages 158–162. Verlag Chemie, Weinheim.
- 2928 Kostadinov, T. S., Siegel, D. a., and Maritorena, S. (2009). Retrieval of the particle size distribu-
2929 tion from satellite ocean color observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 114(C9):1–22.
- 2930 Kostadinov, T. S., Siegel, D. a., and Maritorena, S. (2010). Global variability of phytoplankton
2931 functional types from space: Assessment via the particle size distribution. *Biogeosciences*,
2932 7(10):3239–3257.
- 2933 Kristiansen, S. and Lund, B. A. (1989). Nitrogen cycling in the Barents Sea. Uptake of nitro-
2934 gen in the water column. *Deep Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers*,
2935 36(2):255–268.
- 2936 Kudela, R., Pitcher, G., Probyn, T., Figueiras, F., Moita, T., and Trainer, V. (2005). Harmful Algal
2937 Blooms in Coastal Upwelling Systems. *Oceanography*, 18(2):184–197.
- 2938 Kudela, R. M., Seeyave, S., and Cochlan, W. P. (2010). The role of nutrients in regulation
2939 and promotion of harmful algal blooms in upwelling systems. *Progress in Oceanography*,
2940 85(1-2):122–135.
- 2941 Kutser, T., Metsamaa, L., Strömbeck, N., and Vahtmäe, E. (2006). Monitoring cyanobacterial
2942 blooms by satellite remote sensing. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science*, 67(1-2):303–312.
- 2943 Labib, W. (1996). Water Discoloration in Alexandria, Egypt, April 1993. I. Occurrence of *Proro-*
2944 *centrum Triestinum Schiffer* (Red Tide) Bloom and Associated Physical and Chemical Con-
2945 ditions. *Chemistry and Ecology*, 12(3):163–170.
- 2946 Laws, E., Falkowski, P. G., Smith, W. O., Ducklow, H., and McCarthy, J. J. (2000). Temperature
2947 effects on export production in the open ocean. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, 14(4):1231–
2948 1246.
- 2949 Lawton, J. (1999). Are there general laws in ecology? *OIKOS*, 84(2):177–192.

- 2950 Le Quéré, C. L., Harrison, S. P., Colin Prentice, I., Buitenhuis, E. T., Aumont, O., Bopp, L.,
2951 Claustre, H., Cotrim Da Cunha, L., Geider, R., Giraud, X., Klaas, C., Kohfeld, K. E., Legendre,
2952 L., Manizza, M., Platt, T., Rivkin, R. B., Sathyendranath, S., Uitz, J., Watson, A. J., and Wolf-
2953 Gladrow, D. (2005). Ecosystem dynamics based on plankton functional types for global ocean
2954 biogeochemistry models. *Global Change Biology*, 11:2016–2040.
- 2955 Levin, S. A. (1992). The problem of pattern and scale in ecology. *Ecology*, 73(6):1943–1967.
- 2956 Levy, M., Jahn, O., Dutkiewicz, S., Follows, M. J., and D’Ovidio, F. (2015). The dynamical land-
2957 scape of marine phytoplankton diversity. *Journal of the Royal Society Interface*, 12:20150481.
- 2958 L’Helguen, S., Maguer, J. F., and Caradec, J. (2008). Inhibition kinetics of nitrate uptake by am-
2959 monium in size-fractionated oceanic phytoplankton communities: Implications for new pro-
2960 duction and f-ratio estimates. *Journal of Plankton Research*, 30(10):1179–1188.
- 2961 Li, J., Glibert, P. M., and Zhou, M. (2010). Temporal and spatial variability in nitrogen uptake
2962 kinetics during harmful dinoflagellate blooms in the East China Sea. *Harmful Algae*, 9(6):531–
2963 539.
- 2964 Lind, P. and Jeyasingh, P. (2015). Genotypic differences in phosphorous use physiology in pro-
2965 ducers (*Chlamydomonas reinhardtii*) and consumers (*Daphnia pulex*) interact to alter primary
2966 and secondary production. *Evolutionary Ecology*, 29:551–563.
- 2967 Lindemann, C., Fiksen, O., Andersen, K., and Aksnes, D. (2016). Scaling laws in phytoplankton
2968 nutrient uptake affinity. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 3(March):1–6.
- 2969 Lindholm, T. (1985). *Mesodinium rubrum* - a unique photosynthetic ciliate. *Adv. Aquatic Micro-*
2970 *biol.*, 3:1–48.
- 2971 Litchman, E., Edwards, K. F., and Klausmeier, C. A. (2015). Microbial resource utilization traits
2972 and trade-offs: implications for community structure, functioning, and biogeochemical impacts
2973 at present and in the future. *Frontiers in Microbiology*, 06(April):1–10.

- 2974 Litchman, E., Edwards, K. F., Klausmeier, C. A., and Thomas, M. K. (2012). Phytoplankton
2975 niches, traits and eco-evolutionary responses to global environmental change. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 470:235–248.
2976
- 2977 Litchman, E. and Klausmeier, C. A. (2008). Trait-Based Community Ecology of Phytoplankton.
2978 *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics*, 39(1):615–639.
- 2979 Litchman, E., Klausmeier, C. a., Schofield, O. M., and Falkowski, P. G. (2007). The role of
2980 functional traits and trade-offs in structuring phytoplankton communities: scaling from cellular
2981 to ecosystem level. *Ecology letters*, 10(12):1170–81.
- 2982 Lomas, M. W., Bonachela, J. A., Levin, S. A., and Martiny, A. C. (2014). Impact of ocean
2983 phytoplankton diversity on phosphate uptake. *In review*, 111(49):17540–5.
- 2984 Lomas, M. W. and Glibert, P. M. (1999). Temperature regulation of nitrate uptake: A novel hy-
2985 pothesis about nitrate uptake and reduction in cool-water diatoms. *Limnology and Oceanog-
2986 raphy*, 44(3):556–572.
- 2987 Lomas, M. W. and Glibert, P. M. (2000). Comparisons of nitrate uptake, storage, and reduction
2988 in marine diatoms and flagellates. *Journal of Phycology*, 36(5):903–913.
- 2989 Losada, M., Guerrero, M. G., and Vega, J. M. (1981). The assimilatory reduction of nitrate. In
2990 *Biology of Inorganic Nitrogen and Sulfur*, pages 30–63. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg.
- 2991 Maclsaac, J. and Dugdale, R. (1972). Interactions of light and inorganic nitrogen in controlling
2992 nitrogen uptake in the sea. *Deep Sea Research and Oceanographic Abstracts*, 19(3):209–
2993 232.
- 2994 Maguer, J., L'Huelgen, S., Caradec, J., and Klein, C. (2011). Size-dependent uptake of nitrate
2995 and ammonium as a function of light in well-mixed temperate coastal waters. *Continental
2996 Shelf Research*, 31(15):1620–1631.
- 2997 Malone, T. (1980a). Algal size. In Morris, I., editor, *The physiological ecology of phytoplankton*,
2998 pages 433–464. Blackwell, London.

- 2999 Malone, T. C. (1980b). Size-fractionated primary productivity of marine phytoplankton. In
3000 Falkowski, P., editor, *Primary Productivity in the Sea*, pages 301–320. Plenum, New York.
- 3001 Margalef, R., Estrada, M., and Blasco, D. (1979). Functional morphology of organisms involved
3002 in red tides, as adapted to decaying turbulence. In Seliger, D. L. T. and H., H., editors, *Toxic*
3003 *Dinoflagellate Blooms*, pages 89–94. Elsevier.
- 3004 Matson, P. A. (1992). Special Feature: The Relative Contributions to Top Down and Bottom Up
3005 Forces in Population and Community Ecology. *Ecology*, 73(3):723.
- 3006 McCann, K. S. (2000). The diversity-stability debate. *Nature*, 405(6783):228–233.
- 3007 McCarthy, J., Taylor, W., and Taft, J. (1975). The dynamics of nitrogen and phosphorous cycling
3008 in the open waters of the chesapeake bay. *Marine Chemistry in Coastal Environment*, pages
3009 664–681.
- 3010 McCarthy, J. J. and Goldman, J. C. (1979). Nitrogenous nutrition of marine phytoplankton in
3011 nutrient-depleted waters. *Science*, 203(4381):670–672.
- 3012 McCarthy, J. J., Taylor, W. R., and Taft, J. L. (1977). Nitrogenous nutrition of the plankton in
3013 the Chesapeake Bay:1. Nutrient availability and phytoplankton preferences. *Limnology and*
3014 *Oceanography*, 22(6):996–1011.
- 3015 McClain, C. R. (2009). A decade of satellite ocean color observations. *Annual review of marine*
3016 *science*, 1:19–42.
- 3017 McGill, B. J., Enquist, B. J., Weiher, E., and Westoby, M. (2006). Rebuilding community ecology
3018 from functional traits. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, 21(4):178–185.
- 3019 Menden-Deuer, S. and Lessard, E. J. (2000). Carbon to volume relationships for dinoflagellates,
3020 diatoms, and other protist plankton. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 45(3):569–579.
- 3021 Merico, A., Bruggeman, J., and Wirtz, K. (2009). A trait-based approach for downscaling com-
3022 plexity in plankton ecosystem models. *Ecological Modelling*, 220(21):3001–3010.

- 3023 Michaels, A., Karl, D., and Capone, D. (2001). Element Stoichiometry, New Production and
3024 Nitrogen Fixation. *Oceanography*, 14(4):68–77.
- 3025 Miller, P. I., Shutler, J. D., Moore, G. F., and Groom, S. B. (2006). SeaWiFS discrimination of
3026 harmful algal bloom evolution. *International Journal of Remote Sensing*, 27(11):2287–2301.
- 3027 Mitchell-Innes, B. A. and Pitcher, G. C. (1992). Hydrographic parameters as indicators of the
3028 suitability of phytoplankton populations as food for herbivorous copepods. *South African
3029 Journal of Marine Science*, 12(1):355–365.
- 3030 Mitra, A. and Flynn, K. J. (2010). Modelling mixotrophy in harmful algal blooms: More or less
3031 the sum of the parts? *Journal of Marine Systems*, 83(3-4):158–169.
- 3032 Moloney, C. L., Fennessy, S. T., Gibbons, M. J., Roychoudhury, A., Shillington, F. A., von der
3033 Heyden, B. P., and Watermeyer, K. (2013). Reviewing evidence of marine ecosystem change
3034 off South Africa. *African Journal of Marine Science*, 35(3):427–448.
- 3035 Moloney, C. L., Field, J., and Lucas, M. (1991). The size-based dynamics of plankton food
3036 webs. II. Simulations of three contrasting southern Benguela food webs. *Journal of Plankton
3037 Research*, 13(5):1039–1092.
- 3038 Moloney, C. L. and Field, J. G. (1989). General allometric equations for rates of nutrient uptake,
3039 ingestion, and respiration in plankton organisms. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 34(7):1290–
3040 1299.
- 3041 Monod, J. (1949). The Growth of Bacterial Cultures. *Annual Review of Microbiology*, 3(1):371–
3042 394.
- 3043 Montagnes, D., Berges, J., Harrison, P., and Taylor, F. (1994). Estimating carbon, nitrogen, pro-
3044 tein and chlorophyll a from volume in marine phytoplankton. *Limnology and Oceanography*,
3045 39:1044–1060.
- 3046 Montagnes, D. J. S. and Lynn, D. H. (1989). The annual cycle of *Mesodinium rubrum* in the wa-

- 3047 ters surrounding the Isles of Shoals, Gulf of Maine. *Journal of Plankton Research*, 11(2):193–
3048 201.
- 3049 Monteiro, P. M. S. and Largier, J. L. (1999). Thermal Stratification in Saldanha Bay (South Africa)
3050 and Subtidal, Density-driven Exchange with the Coastal Waters of the Benguela Upwelling
3051 System. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science*, 49:877–890.
- 3052 Monteiro, P. M. S., Spolander, B., and Brundrit, G. B. (1998). Shellfish mariculture in the
3053 Benguela system. Estimates of nitrogen driven new production in Saldanha Bay using two
3054 physical models. *Journal of Shellfish Research*, 17(1):3–13.
- 3055 Moore, K., Doney, S., and Lindsay, K. (2002). An intermediate complexity marine ecosystem
3056 model for the global domain. *Deep Sea Research Part II*, 49:403–462.
- 3057 Mouw, C. and Yoder, J. (2005). Primary production calculations in the Mid-Atlantic Bight, in-
3058 cluding effects of phytoplankton community size structure. *Limnology and Oceanography*,
3059 50(4):1232–1243.
- 3060 Muggli, D. and Smith, W. J. (1993). Regulation of nitrate and ammonium uptake in the Green-
3061 land Sea. *Marine Biology*, 208:199–208.
- 3062 Mulholland, M. R. and Lomas, M. W. (2008). Nitrogen Uptake and Assimilation. In Capone D.G.,
3063 Bronk, D.A., Mulholland, M.R. and Carpenter, E., editor, *Nitrogen in the Marine Environment.*,
3064 pages 303–359. Academic Press.
- 3065 Mullin, M., Sloan, P., and Eppley, R. (1966). Relationship between carbon content, cell volume
3066 and area in phytoplankton. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 11:307–311.
- 3067 Nair, A., Sathyendranath, S., Platt, T., Morales, J., Stuart, V., Forget, M. H., Devred, E., and
3068 Bouman, H. (2008). Remote sensing of phytoplankton functional types. *Remote Sensing of*
3069 *Environment*, 112(8):3366–3375.
- 3070 Nelson, G. and Hutchings, L. (1983). The Benguela upwelling area. *Progress in Oceanography*,
3071 12(3):333–356.

- 3072 Nydahl, F. (1976). On the optimum conditions for the reduction of nitrate to nitrite by cadmium.
3073 *Talanta*, 23(5):349–357.
- 3074 Packard, T., Blasco, D., and Barber, R. (1978). *Mesodinium rubrum* in the Baja California
3075 Upwelling system. In Boje, R. B. and Tomczak, M., editors, *Upwelling Ecosystems*, pages
3076 72–74. Springer Berlin Heidelberg.
- 3077 Paerl, H. W. (1991). Ecophysiological and trophic implications of light-stimulated amino acid
3078 utilization in marine picoplankton. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, 57(2):473–479.
- 3079 Pahlow, M. (2005). Linking chlorophyll nutrient dynamics to the Redfield NC ratio with a model
3080 of optimal phytoplankton growth. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 287:33–43.
- 3081 Pahlow, M., Dietz, H., and Oschlies, A. (2013). Optimality-based model of phytoplankton growth
3082 and diazotrophy. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 489:1–16.
- 3083 Pahlow, M. and Oschlies, A. (2009). Chain model of phytoplankton P, N and light colimitation.
3084 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 376(2):69–83.
- 3085 Pahlow, M., Vézina, A. F., Casault, B., Maass, H., Malloch, L., Wright, D. G., and Lu, Y. (2008).
3086 Adaptive model of plankton dynamics for the North Atlantic. *Progress in Oceanography*,
3087 76(2):151–191.
- 3088 Parsons, T., Maita, Y., and Lalli, C. (1984). *A manual chemical and biological methods for*
3089 *seawater analysis*. Pergamon, New York.
- 3090 Parsons, T. R., Stephens, K., and Strickland, J. D. H. (1961). On the Chemical Composition
3091 of Eleven Species of Marine Phytoplankters. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of*
3092 *Canada*, 18(6):1001–1016.
- 3093 Pasciak, W. J. G. (1974). Transport limitation of nutrient uptake in phytoplankton. *Limnology*
3094 *and Oceanography*, 19(6):881–888.
- 3095 Pitcher, G., Agenbag, J., Calder, D., Horstman, D., Jury, M., and Taunton-Clark, J. (1995). Red
3096 tides in relation to the meteorology of the southern Benguela upwelling system. In Lassus,

- 3097 P., Arzul, G., Erard, E., Gentien, P., and Marcaillou, C., editors, *Harmful Marine Algal Blooms*,
3098 pages 657–662. Intercept Ltd.
- 3099 Pitcher, G., Boyd, A., Horstman, D., and Mitchell-Innes, B. (1998a). Subsurface dinoflagellate
3100 populations, frontal blooms and the formation of red tide in the southern Benguela upwelling
3101 system. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 172:253–264.
- 3102 Pitcher, G., Walker, D., Mitchell-Innes, B., and Moloney, C. L. (1991). Short term variability
3103 during an anchor station study in the southern Benguela upwelling system: Phytoplankton
3104 dynamics. *Progress in Oceanography*, 28(1):39–64.
- 3105 Pitcher, G. C. and Boyd, A. J. (1996). Across-shelf and alongshore dinoflagellate distributions
3106 and the mechanisms of red tide formation within the southern Benguela upwelling system.
3107 In Yasumoto, T., Oshima, Y., Fukuyo, Y., editor, *Harmful and Toxic Algal Blooms.*, pages
3108 243–246. Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission of UNESCO, Paris.
- 3109 Pitcher, G. C., Boyd, A. J., Horstman, D. A., and Mitchell-Innes, B. A. (1998b). Subsurface di-
3110 noflagellate populations, frontal blooms and the formation of red tide in the southern Benguela
3111 upwelling system. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 172:253–264.
- 3112 Pitcher, G. C. and Calder, D. (2000). Harmful algal blooms of the southern Benguela Current:
3113 a review and appraisal of monitoring from 1989 to 1997. *South African Journal of Marine
3114 Science*, 22(1):255–271.
- 3115 Pitcher, G. C. and Cockcroft, A. C. (1998). Low oxygen, rock lobster strandings and PSP.
3116 In Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission of UNESCO, editor, *Harmful Algal News*,
3117 volume 17, pages 1–3. Paris.
- 3118 Pitcher, G. C. and Nelson, G. (2006). Characteristics of the surface boundary layer important
3119 to the development of red tide on the southern Namaqua shelf of the Benguela upwelling
3120 system. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 51(6):2660–2674.
- 3121 Pitcher, G. C. and Probyn, T. A. (2011). Anoxia in southern Benguela during the autumn of 2009
3122 and its linkage to a bloom of the dinoflagellate *Ceratium balechii*. *Harmful Algae*, 11:23–32.

- 3123 Pitcher, G. C. and Weeks, S. J. (2006). 7 The variability and potential for prediction of harmful
3124 algal blooms in the southern Benguela ecosystem. In Shannon, V., Hempel, G., Malanotte-
3125 Rizzoli, P., Moloney, C. and Woods, J., editor, *Large Marine Ecosystems*, volume 14, chap-
3126 ter 14, pages 125–146. Elsevier B.V.
- 3127 Platt, T. (1985). Structure of the marine ecosystem: its allometric basis. In Ulanowicz, R.E.
3128 and Platt, T., editor, *In: Ulanowicz, R.E. and Platt, T. (Eds.): Ecosystems theory for biological*
3129 *oceanography. Can. Bull. Fish. Aquat. Sciences*, volume 213, pages 55–64. Can. Bull. Fish.
3130 Aquat. Sci.
- 3131 Platt, T., Gallegos, C. L., and Harrison, W. G. (1980). Photoinhibition of photosynthesis in natural
3132 assemblages of marine phytoplankton. *Journal of Marine Research*, 38(4):687–701.
- 3133 Probyn, T. A. (1985). Nitrogen uptake by size-fractionated phytoplankton populations in the
3134 southern Benguela upwelling system. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 22:249–258.
- 3135 Probyn, T. A. (1987). Ammonium regeneration by microplankton in an upwelling environment.
3136 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 37(1965):53–64.
- 3137 Probyn, T. A. (1988). Nitrogen utilization by phytoplankton in the Namibian upwelling region
3138 during an austral spring. *Deep Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers*,
3139 35(8):1387–1404.
- 3140 Probyn, T. A. (1992). The inorganic nitrogen nutrition of phytoplankton in the southern Benguela:
3141 new production, phytoplankton size and implications for pelagic foodwebs. *South African*
3142 *Journal of Marine Science*, 12(1):411–420.
- 3143 Probyn, T. A., Atkins, J. F., and Pitcher, G. C. (2015). Saldanha Bay, South Africa III: new
3144 production and carrying capacity for bivalve aquaculture. *South African Journal Of Marine*
3145 *Science*, 37(4):521–531.
- 3146 Probyn, T. A. and Painting, S. J. (1985). Nitrogen uptake by size-fractionated phytoplankton
3147 populations in Antarctic surface waters. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 30(6):1327–1332.

- 3148 Probyn, T. A., Pitcher, G. C., Monteiro, P. M. S., Boyd, A. J., and Nelson, G. (2000). Physical
3149 processes contributing to harmful algal blooms in Saldanha Bay , South Africa. *South African*
3150 *Journal of Marine Science*, 22(November):285–297.
- 3151 Probyn, T. A., Waldron, H. N., and James, A. G. (1990). Size-fractionated measurements of
3152 nitrogen uptake in aged upwelled waters: Implications for pelagic food webs. *Limnology and*
3153 *Oceanography*, 35(1):202–210.
- 3154 Probyn, T. A., Waldron, H. N., Searson, S., and Owens, N. J. P. (1996). Diel variability in
3155 nitrogenous nutrient uptake at photic and subphotic depths. *Journal of Plankton Research*,
3156 18(11):2063–2079.
- 3157 Prowe, A. E. F., Pahlow, M., Dutkiewicz, S., and Oschlies, A. (2014). How important is diver-
3158 sity for capturing environmental-change responses in ecosystem models? *Biogeosciences*,
3159 11(12):3397–3407.
- 3160 Ptacnik, R., Solimini, A. G., Andersen, T., Tamminen, T., Brettum, P. I., Lepistö, L., Willén, E.,
3161 and Rekolainen, S. (2008). Diversity predicts stability and resource use efficiency in natural
3162 phytoplankton communities. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United*
3163 *States of America*, 105(13):5134–5138.
- 3164 Raitsoo, D., Lavender, S. J., and Maravelias, C. (2008). Identifying four phytoplankton functional
3165 types from space: An ecological approach. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 53(2):605–613.
- 3166 Raven, J. (1997). The vacuole: a cost-benefit analysis. In Leigh, R. and Sanders, D., ed-
3167 itors, *The plant vacuole. Advances in Botanical Research incorporating Advances in Plant*
3168 *Pathology*, pages 59–82. San Diego.
- 3169 Raven, J. A. (1980). Nutrient transport in microalgae. *Advances in Microbiological Physiology*,
3170 21:47–226.
- 3171 Redfield, A. C. (1958). The biological control of chemical factors in the environment. *American*
3172 *Scientist*, 46(3).

- 3173 Reynolds, C. S. (1989). Physical determinants of phytoplankton succession. In Sommer, U.,
3174 editor, *Plankton Ecology*, pages 9–56. Brock-Springer, Madison.
- 3175 Rhee, G.-Y. (1974). Phosphate uptake under nitrate limitation by *Scenedesmus* sp. and its
3176 ecological implications. *Journal of Phycology*, 10:470–475.
- 3177 Rhee, G.-Y. (1978). Effects of N:P atomic ratios nitrate limitation on algal growth, cell composi-
3178 tion, nitrate uptake. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 23(1):10–25.
- 3179 Riegman, R., Flaming, I. A., and Noordeloos, A. M. (1998). Size-fractionated uptake of am-
3180 monium, nitrate and urea and phytoplankton growth in the North Sea during spring 1994.
3181 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 173:85–94.
- 3182 Robertson Lain, L., Bernard, S., and Evers-King, H. (2014). Biophysical modelling of phyto-
3183 plankton communities from first principles using two-layered spheres: Equivalent Algal Pop-
3184 ulations (EAP) model. *Optics Express*, 22(14):16745.
- 3185 Rouault, M., Pohl, B., and Penven, P. (2010). Coastal oceanic climate change and variability
3186 from 1982 to 2009 around South Africa. *African Journal of Marine Science*, 32(2):237–246.
- 3187 Ryan, J. P., Fischer, A. M., Kudela, R. M., Gower, J. F. R., King, S. A., Marin, R., and Chavez,
3188 F. P. (2009). Influences of upwelling and downwelling winds on red tide bloom dynamics in
3189 Monterey Bay, California. *Continental Shelf Research*, 29(5-6):785–795.
- 3190 Rykaczewski, R. R., Dunne, J. P., Sydeman, W. J., García-Reyes, M., Black, B. A., and Bograd,
3191 S. J. (2015). Poleward displacement of coastal upwelling-favorable winds in the ocean’s east-
3192 ern boundary currents through the 21st century. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 42(15):6424–
3193 6431.
- 3194 Ryther, J. H. (1969). Photosynthesis and fish production in the sea. *Science (New York, N.Y.)*,
3195 166(901):72–76.
- 3196 Ryther, J. H. and Dunstan, W. M. (1971). Nitrogen, phosphorus, and eutrophication in the
3197 coastal marine environment. *Science (New York, N.Y.)*, 171(975):1008–1013.

- 3198 Sarthou, G., Timmermans, K. R., Blain, S., and Tréguer, P. (2005). Growth physiology and fate
3199 of diatoms in the ocean: A review. *Journal of Sea Research*, 53(1-2 SPEC. ISS.):25–42.
- 3200 Sathyendranath, S., Lazzara, L., and Prieur, L. (1987). Variations in the spectral values of
3201 specific absorption of phytoplankton. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 32(2):403–415.
- 3202 Sathyendranath, S., Stuart, V., Nair, A., Oka, K., Nakane, T., Bouman, H., Forget, M. H., Maass,
3203 H., and Platt, T. (2009). Carbon-to-chlorophyll ratio and growth rate of phytoplankton in the
3204 sea. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 383:73–84.
- 3205 Sathyendranath, S., Watts, L., Devred, E., Platt, T., Caverhill, C., and Maass, H. (2004). Dis-
3206 crimination of diatoms from other phytoplankton using ocean-colour data. *Marine Ecology*
3207 *Progress Series*, 272:59–68.
- 3208 Schaecter, M. (1968). Growth: cells and populations. In Mcquillen, J. and Mandlestam, K.,
3209 editor, *Biochemistry of bacterial cell growth.*, pages 136–162. Wiley.
- 3210 Seeyave, S., Probyn, T. A., Pitcher, G. C., Lucas, M. I., and Purdie, D. A. (2009). Nitrogen
3211 nutrition in assemblages dominated by *Pseudo-nitzschia* spp., *Alexandrium catenella* and
3212 *Dinophysis acuminata* off the west coast of South Africa. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*,
3213 379(April 2005):91–107.
- 3214 Serra, J. L., Llama, M. J., and Cadenas, E. (1978). Nitrate Utilization by the diatom *Skeletonema*
3215 *costatum*: II. Regulation of Nitrate Uptake. *Plant physiology*, 62(6):991–994.
- 3216 Shannon, L. (2006). Benguela: Predicting a large marine ecosystem. A plan comes together.
3217 In Shannon, V., Hempel, G., Malanotte-Rizzoli, P., Moloney, C., and Woods, J., editors, *Large*
3218 *Marine Ecosystems*, pages 3–10. Elsevier, Amsterdam.
- 3219 Shannon, L. J., Field, J. G., and Moloney, C. L. (2004). Simulating anchovy sardine regime
3220 shifts in the southern Benguela ecosystem. *Ecological modelling*, 172:269–281.
- 3221 Sheldon, R. and Parsons, T. (1967). A continuous size spectrum for particulate matter in the
3222 sea. *Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, 24(5):909–915.

- 3223 Sheldon, R. W., Prakash, A., and Sutcliffe, W. (1972). The size distribution of particles in the
3224 ocean. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 17(3):327–340.
- 3225 Sicko-Goad, L. M., Schelske, C. L., and Stoermer, E. F. (1984). Estimation of intracellular car-
3226 bon and silica content of diatoms from natural assemblages using morphometric techniques.
3227 *Limnology and Oceanography*, 29(6):1170–1178.
- 3228 Sieburth, J. M., Smetacek, V., and Lenz, J. (1978). Pelagic ecosystem structure: Heterotrophic
3229 compartments of the plankton and their relationship to plankton size fractions. *Limnology and*
3230 *Oceanography*, 23(6):1256–1263.
- 3231 Smayda, T. J. (2000). *Ecological features of harmful algal blooms in coastal upwelling ecosys-*
3232 *tems*, volume 22.
- 3233 Smayda, T. J. and Reynolds, C. S. (2001). Community Assembly in Marine Phytoplankton: Ap-
3234 plication of Recent Models to Harmful Dinoflagellate Blooms. *Journal of Plankton Research*,
3235 23(5):447–461.
- 3236 Smayda, T. J. and Reynolds, C. S. (2003). Strategies of marine dinoflagellate survival and some
3237 rules of assembly. *Journal of Sea Research*, 49(2):95–106.
- 3238 Smetacek, V. (1999). Diatoms and the Ocean Carbon Cycle. *Protist*, 150:25–32.
- 3239 Smith, A. R. C., Prezelin, B. B., Bidigare, R. R., Baker, K. S., and Smith, R. C. (2011). in coastal
3240 waters of photosynthetic modeling production biological parameters . 34(8):1524–1544.
- 3241 Smith, S. D. (1988). Coefficients for sea surface wind stress, heat flux, and wind profiles as a
3242 function of wind speed and temperature. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 95(C2):15467–
3243 15472.
- 3244 Smith, S. L., Pahlow, M., Merico, a., Acevedo-Trejos, E., Sasai, Y., Yoshikawa, C., Sasaoka, K.,
3245 Fujiki, T., Matsumoto, K., and Honda, M. C. (2015). Flexible phytoplankton functional type
3246 (FlexPFT) model: size-scaling of traits and optimal growth. *Journal of Plankton Research*,
3247 0:1–16.

- 3248 Smith, S. L. and Yamanaka, Y. (2007). Optimization-based model of multnutrient uptake kinet-
3249 ics. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 52(4):1545–1558.
- 3250 Smith, S. L., Yamanaka, Y., Pahlow, M., and Oschlies, A. (2009). Optimal uptake kinetics:
3251 Physiological acclimation explains the pattern of nitrate uptake by phytoplankton in the ocean.
3252 *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 384:1–12.
- 3253 Smith, W. and Barber, R. (1979). A carbon budget for the autotrophic ciliate *Mesodinium*
3254 *rubrum*. *Journal of Phycology*, 15(1):27–33.
- 3255 Solomon, C. M., Collier, J. L., Berg, G. M., and Glibert, P. M. (2010). Role of urea in micro-
3256 bial metabolism in aquatic systems: A biochemical and molecular review. *Aquatic Microbial*
3257 *Ecology*, 59(1):67–88.
- 3258 Sommer, U. (1984). The paradox of the plankton: Fluctuations of phosphorus availability
3259 maintain diversity of phytoplankton in flow-through cultures. *Limnology and Oceanography*,
3260 29(3):633–636.
- 3261 Sommer, U. (1985). Comparison between steady state and non-steady state competition: Ex-
3262 periments with natural phytoplankton. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 30(2):335–346.
- 3263 Sommer, U. (1989). The role of competition for resources in phytoplankton species succession.
3264 In Sommer, U., editor, *Plankton Ecology - succession in plankton communities*, pages 57–
3265 106. Springer, Berlin.
- 3266 Sordo, I., Barton, E., Cotos, J. M., and Pazos, Y. (2001). An inshore poleward current in the NW
3267 of the Iberian Peninsula detected from satellite images, and its relation with *G. catenatum* and
3268 *D. acuminata* blooms in the Galician Rias. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science*, 53:787–799.
- 3269 Steele, J. (1954). Plant production in the northern North Sea. *Mar. Res. Ser. Scot. Home Dep.*,
3270 7:1–36.
- 3271 Steiner, C. F. (2003). Keystone predator effects and grazer control of planktonic primary pro-
3272 duction. 101(3):569–577.

- 3273 Stoecker, D., Taniguchi, A., and Michaels, A. E. (1989). Abundance of autotrophic, mixotrophic
3274 and heterotrophic planktonic ciliates in shelf and slope waters. *Marine Ecology Progress
3275 Series*, 50(3):241–254.
- 3276 Stolte, W. and Riegman, R. (1995). Effect of phytoplankton cell size on transient-state nitrate
3277 and ammonium uptake kinetics. *Microbiology*, 141(5):1221–1229.
- 3278 Strathmann, R. R. (1967). Estimating the organic carbon content of phytoplankton from cell
3279 volume or plasma volume. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 12(3):411–418.
- 3280 Strom, S. L. and Morello, T. A. (1998). Comparative growth rates and yields of ciliates and
3281 heterotrophic dinoflagellates. *Journal of Plankton Research*, 20(3):571–584.
- 3282 Stumpf, R. and Tomlinson, M. (2005). Remote sensing of harmful algal blooms. *Remote Sens-
3283 ing of Coastal Aquatic*, pages 277–296.
- 3284 Stumpf, R. P., Culver, M. E., Tester, P. A., Tomlinson, M., Kirkpatrick, G. J., Pederson, B. A.,
3285 Truby, E., Ransibrahmanakul, V., and Soracco, M. (2003). Monitoring *Karenia brevis* blooms
3286 in the Gulf of Mexico using satellite ocean color imagery and other data. 2:147–160.
- 3287 Sun, J. and Liu, D. (2003). Geometric models for calculating cell biovolume and surface area
3288 for phytoplankton. *Journal of Plankton Research*, 25(11):1331–1346.
- 3289 Sunda, W. G., Shertzer, K. W., and Hardison, D. R. (2009). Ammonium uptake and growth
3290 models in marine diatoms: Monod and Droop revisited. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*,
3291 386:29–41.
- 3292 Syrett, P. (1956). The assimilation of ammonia and nitrate by nitrogen starved cells of *Chlorella*
3293 *vulgaris*. *Physiologia Plantarum*, 9:19–28.
- 3294 Syrett, P. (1981). Nitrogen metabolism in microalgae. *Canadian Bulletin Fisheries and Aquatic
3295 Science*, 210:182–210.
- 3296 Tamminen, T. and Irmisch, A. (1996). Urea uptake kinetics of a midsummer planktonic commu-
3297 nity on the SW coast of Finland. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 130(1-3):201–211.

- 3298 Tang, E. P. (1995). The allometry of algal growth rates. *Journal of Plankton Research*,
3299 17(6):1325–1335.
- 3300 Terseleer, N., Bruggeman, J., Lancelot, C., and Gypens, N. (2014). Trait-based representation
3301 of diatom functional diversity in a plankton functional type model of the eutrophied southern
3302 North Sea. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 59(6):1958–1972.
- 3303 Thingstad, T. (1998). A theoretical approach to structuring mechanisms in the pelagic food web.
3304 *Hydrobiologia*, 363:59–72.
- 3305 Thingstad, T., Strand, E., and Larsen, A. (2010). Stepwise building of plankton functional type
3306 (PFT) models: A feasible route to complex models? *Progress in Oceanography*, 84:6–15.
- 3307 Tilman, D. (2001). Functional diversity. *Encyclopedia of Biodiversity*, 3(3):109–120.
- 3308 Tilman, D., Kilham, S. S., and Kilham, P. (1982). Phytoplankton Community Ecology. The Role
3309 of Limiting Nutrients. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, 13(1):349–372.
- 3310 Tilstone, G. H., Figueiras, F. G., and Fraga, F. (1994). Upwelling-downwelling sequences in
3311 the generation of red tides in a coastal upwelling system. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*,
3312 112(3):241–254.
- 3313 Trainer, V. L., Hickey, B. M., and Horner, R. a. (2002). Biological and physical dynamics of
3314 domoic acid production off the Washington coast. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 47(5):1438–
3315 1446.
- 3316 Uitz, J., Claustre, H., Gentili, B., and Stramski, D. (2010). Phytoplankton class-specific primary
3317 production in the world's oceans: Seasonal and interannual variability from satellite observa-
3318 tions. *Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, 24(3):1–6.
- 3319 Uitz, J., Claustre, H., Morel, A., and Hooker, S. B. (2006). Vertical distribution of phytoplank-
3320 ton communities in open ocean: An assessment based on surface chlorophyll. *Journal of*
3321 *Geophysical Research*, 111:1–23.

- 3322 Utermohl, H. (1958). Zur vervollkommnung der quantitativen Phytoplankton Methodik.
3323 *Mitt.Int.Ver.Theor.Angew.Limnol.*, 9:1–38.
- 3324 Vallina, S. M., Follows, M. J., Dutkiewicz, S., Montoya, J. M., Cermeno, P., and Loreau, M.
3325 (2014). Global relationship between phytoplankton diversity and productivity in the ocean.
3326 *Nature communications*, 5:4299.
- 3327 Vallina, S. M. and Le Quéré, C. (2011). Stability of complex food webs: Resilience, resistance
3328 and the average interaction strength. *Journal of Theoretical Biology*, 272(1):160–173.
- 3329 van der Lingen, C., Hutchings, L., and Field, J. (2006). Comparative trophodynamics of anchovy
3330 *Engraulis encrasicolus* and sardine *Sardinops sagax* in the southern Benguela: are species
3331 alternations between small pelagic fish trophodynamically mediated? *African Journal of*
3332 *Marine Science*, 28(3-4):465–477.
- 3333 Varela, D. E. and Harrison, P. J. (1999). Effect of ammonium on nitrate utilization by *Emiliania*
3334 *huxleyi*, a coccolithophore from the oceanic northeastern Pacific. *Marine Ecology Progress*
3335 *Series*, 186:67–74.
- 3336 Verheye, H. (2000). Decadal-scale trends across several marine trophic levels in the southern
3337 Benguela upwelling system off South Africa. *Ambios*, 29(1):30–34.
- 3338 Verity, P. G., Robertson, C. Y., Tronzo, C. R., Andrews, M. G., Nelson, J. R., and Sieracki, M. E.
3339 (1992). Relationships between cell volume and the carbon and nitrogen content of marine
3340 photosynthetic nanoplankton. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 37(7):1434–1446.
- 3341 Ward, B., Friedrichs, M., Anderson, T., and Oschlies, A. (2010). Parameter optimisation tech-
3342 niques and the problem of underdetermination in marine biogeochemical models. *Journal of*
3343 *Marine Systems*, 81(1-2):34–43.
- 3344 Ward, B. A. (2015). Temperature-correlated changes in phytoplankton community structure are
3345 restricted to polar waters. *PLoS ONE*, 10(8):1–15.

- 3346 Ward, B. A., Dutkiewicz, S., Jahn, O., and Follows, M. J. (2012). A size-structured food-web
3347 model for the global ocean. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 57(6):1877–1891.
- 3348 Watt, D. A., Amory, A. M., and Cresswell, C. F. (1992). Effect of nitrogen supply on the kinetics
3349 and regulation of nitrate assimilation in *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* Dangeard. *J. Exp. Bot.*,
3350 43:605–615.
- 3351 West, G. B., Brown, J. H., and Enquist, B. J. (1997). A general model for the origin of allometric
3352 scaling laws in biology. *Science (New York, N.Y.)*, 276(5309):122–126.
- 3353 Westoby, M. and Wright, I. J. (2006). Land-plant ecology on the basis of functional traits. *Trends*
3354 *in Ecology and Evolution*, 21(5):261–268.
- 3355 Wilkerson, F. and Dugdale, R. C. (2008). Coastal Upwelling. In Capone, D. G., Bronk, D.,
3356 Mulholland, M. R. and Carpenter, E. J., editor, *Nitrogen in the Marine Environment.*, pages
3357 771–797. Elsevier, Oxford.
- 3358 Wilkerson, F. P. and Dugdale, R. C. (1987). The use of large shipboard barrels and drifters to
3359 study the effects of coastal upwelling on phytoplankton dynamics. *Limnology and Oceanog-*
3360 *raphy*, 32(2):368–382.
- 3361 Williams, C., Sharples, J., Mahaffey, C., and Rippeth, T. (2013). Wind-driven nutrient pulses
3362 to the subsurface chlorophyll maximum in seasonally stratified shelf seas. *Geophysical Re-*
3363 *search Letters*, 40(20):5467–5472.
- 3364 Wirtz, K. and Pahlow, M. (2010). Dynamic chlorophyll and nitrogen:carbon regulation in algae
3365 optimizes instantaneous growth rate. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, 402:81–96.
- 3366 Wirtz, K. W. (2013). Mechanistic origins of variability in phytoplankton dynamics: Part I: Niche
3367 formation revealed by a size-based model. *Marine Biology*, 160(9):2319–2335.
- 3368 Wirtz, K. W. and Eckhardt, B. (1996). Effective variables in ecosystem models with an applica-
3369 tion to phytoplankton succession. *Ecological Modelling*, 92(1):33–53.

- 3370 Wright, R. T. and Hobbie, J. E. (1966). Use of glucose and acetate by bacteria and algae in
3371 aquatic ecosystems. *Ecology*, 47:447–464.
- 3372 Wroblewski, J. (1977). A model of phytoplankton plume formation during variable Oregon up-
3373 welling. *Journal of Marine Research*, 35:357–394.
- 3374 Wyatt, T. (2014). Margalef’s mandala and phytoplankton bloom strategies. *Deep-Sea Research*
3375 *Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography*, 101:32–49.
- 3376 Yih, W., Hyung, S. K., Hae, J. J., Myung, G., and Young, G. K. (2004). Ingestion of cryptophyte
3377 cells by the marine photosynthetic ciliate *Mesodinium rubrum*. *Aquatic Microbial Ecology*,
3378 36(2):165–170.
- 3379 Zehr, J. P. and Ward, B. B. (2002). Nitrogen Cycling in the Ocean : New Perspectives on
3380 Processes and Paradigms MINIREVIEW Nitrogen Cycling in the Ocean : New Perspectives
3381 on Processes and Paradigms. *Applied and environmental microbiology*, 68(3):1015–1024.
- 3382 Zibordi, G., Mélin, F., Hooker, S. B., D’Alimonte, D., and Holben, B. (2004). An Autonomous
3383 Above-Water System for the Validation of Ocean Color Radiance Data. *IEEE Transactions*
3384 *on Geoscience and Remote Sensing*, 42(2):401–415.
- 3385 Zingone, A. and Enevoldsen, H. O. (2000). The diversity of harmful algal blooms: a challenge
3386 for science and management. *Ocean and Coastal Management*, 43(8):725–748.

3387

3388

Appendix

3389

- **Obs-PSD configuration:**

3390

The observed particle size distribution (Obs-PSD) configuration used size distributions that

3391

were measured and is the same method as that used in chapter 4 (see Fig. 4.1)

3392

- **S-PSD configuration:**

3393

The standard-PSD configuration (S-PSD) follows closely equation 6 in Bernard et al. (2007) but

3394

scales to volume rather than surface area.

$$esd = VSF * r^{\left[\frac{(1-3V_{eff})}{V_{eff}}\right]} \exp\left[\frac{-r}{(r_{eff}v_{eff})}\right] \quad (5.1)$$

3395

The VSF (volume scaling factor) term is introduced as the total projected volume scaling

3396

parameter, i.e. it is used to manipulate the magnitude of the equivalent size distribution (esd)

3397

by matching the total projected volume to that of the measured particle size distribution. The

3398

equivalent size distributions (esd) were calculated using the effective diameter (D_{eff}) and effective

3399

variance (V_{eff}) of the corresponding measured size distribution, where $r_{eff} = D_{eff}/2$. D_{eff}

3400

is calculated as in chapter 2 equation 2.2. Note: “ESD” is the equivalent spherical diameter,

3401

and “esd” is the equivalent size distribution.

$$D_{eff} = \frac{\int_1^{bins} \frac{\pi}{6} ESD^3}{\int_1^{bins} \frac{\pi}{4} ESD^2} \quad (5.2)$$

3402

and

$$V_{eff} = \frac{\int_1^{bins} (r - r_{eff})^2 r^2 ESD}{r_{eff} \int_1^{bins} ESD} \quad (5.3)$$

3403 In the absence of measured size distributions for volume scaling and for V_{eff} , satellite-
 3404 derived Chl-a concentrations can be used to estimate total volume (e.g. Banse, 1977) and
 3405 V_{eff} can be approximated as in Bernard et al. (2007).

3406 • D_{eff} configuration:

3407 Total volume is considered to be found only within the size class that corresponds to D_{eff} .

Table A1: Output values nitrogen uptake rates from the different representatives of size (Obs-PSD, S-PSD and D_{eff}) and *in situ* measured values. For total N uptake values as depicted in Fig. 5.2, total N= $\text{NO}_3^- + \text{NH}_4^+$.

ρNO_3^-				ρNH_4^+			
<u>Obs PSD</u>	<u>S-PSD</u>	<u>D_{eff}</u>	<u><i>in situ</i></u>	<u>Obs PSD</u>	<u>S-PSD</u>	<u>D_{eff}</u>	<u><i>in situ</i></u>
0.0035	0.0073	0.0197	0.0199	0.0081	0.0190	0.0506	0.0941
0.0955	0.3929	1.2680	0.1116	0.0164	0.0570	0.1848	0.0273
0.0309	0.1181	0.2718	0.0740	0.0096	0.0350	0.0800	0.0481
0.0176	0.0644	0.1788	0.0695	0.0063	0.0223	0.0618	0.0378
0.0243	0.1047	0.1800	0.2188	0.0068	0.0276	0.0481	0.0751
0.0358	0.1705	0.5033	0.3589	0.0055	0.0216	0.0651	0.0348
0.0186	0.0683	0.1034	0.2798	0.0058	0.0202	0.0306	0.0820
0.2220	0.3618	1.0424	0.0115	0.9158	1.6520	4.6732	0.1002
0.3817	0.6653	2.3739	0.0152	0.4174	0.7634	2.6835	0.0499
0.0421	0.0773	0.1253	0.0140	0.0784	0.1479	0.2402	0.0264
0.2134	0.5197	1.9349	0.0290	0.2566	0.6690	2.4953	0.0659
0.0650	0.1338	0.2581	0.0172	0.3335	0.8394	1.7530	0.0493
0.1810	0.3460	1.0089	0.0125	0.8568	2.2440	5.4181	0.0331
0.5725	1.4356	2.9977	0.0344	0.5654	1.9969	7.0269	0.0245
1.4945	3.8814	9.3840	0.9534	2.2024	9.0105	33.5860	0.0435
0.4537	1.5183	5.3554	0.0474	0.3240	1.4921	6.6852	0.0539
5.6179	23.8485	88.6595	0.0153	0.2132	1.5612	2.9482	0.0460

0.7060	3.2253	14.4427	0.1347	0.5863	3.4955	13.1517	0.0629
1.1046	9.0816	17.2499	0.1657	0.0047	0.0214	0.0237	0.0452
0.8387	4.6362	17.4355	0.0554	0.0031	0.0108	0.0217	0.0576
0.0534	0.3053	0.3410	0.5475	0.0037	0.0046	0.0055	0.0116
0.0161	0.0609	0.1224	0.2703	0.0072	0.0094	0.0104	0.0302
0.0008	0.0009	0.0011	0.0020	0.0060	0.0083	0.0098	0.0174
0.0016	0.0020	0.0023	0.0024	0.0019	0.0023	0.0026	0.0048
0.0020	0.0026	0.0031	0.0033	0.0040	0.0052	0.0062	0.0074
0.0014	0.0017	0.0019	0.0015	0.0028	0.0037	0.0041	0.0036
0.0020	0.0026	0.0030	0.0016	0.0057	0.0082	0.0091	0.0168
0.0032	0.0044	0.0048	0.0023	0.0007	0.0009	0.0013	0.0032
0.0127	0.0184	0.0204	0.0226	0.0007	0.0010	0.0016	0.0051
0.0009	0.0012	0.0016	0.0002	0.0083	0.0131	0.0152	0.0058
0.0008	0.0010	0.0017	0.0045	0.0078	0.0113	0.0161	0.0152
0.0446	0.0733	0.0845	0.0239	0.0012	0.0018	0.0019	0.0019
0.0229	0.0335	0.0474	0.0033	0.0035	0.0052	0.0056	0.0029
0.0007	0.0011	0.0011	0.0010	0.0021	0.0032	0.0035	0.0021
0.0044	0.0064	0.0069	0.0029	0.0073	0.0123	0.0147	0.0023
0.0072	0.0109	0.0118	0.0034	0.0029	0.0053	0.0046	0.0047
0.1029	0.1878	0.2257	0.0579	0.0113	0.0217	0.0184	0.0102
0.0031	0.0055	0.0048	0.0123	0.0144	0.0330	0.0254	0.0098
0.0028	0.0052	0.0044	0.0083	0.0043	0.0078	0.0077	0.0029
0.0031	0.0066	0.0051	0.0128	0.0019	0.0022	0.0025	0.0086
0.0073	0.0132	0.0130	0.0061	0.0028	0.0034	0.0042	0.0107
0.0081	0.0103	0.0110	0.0934	0.0028	0.0034	0.0033	0.0087
0.0110	0.0140	0.0170	0.0257	0.0045	0.0054	0.0062	0.0068
0.0097	0.0124	0.0114	0.0083	0.0048	0.0056	0.0101	0.0116
0.0127	0.0160	0.0174	0.0022	0.0032	0.0056	0.0060	0.0028

0.0277	0.0336	0.0581	0.1253	0.0045	0.0080	0.0088	0.0035
0.0051	0.0088	0.0095	0.0160	0.0068	0.0123	0.0132	0.0041
0.0036	0.0064	0.0070	0.0123	0.0137	0.0255	0.0287	0.0038
0.0303	0.0573	0.0611	0.0114	0.0047	0.0078	0.0088	0.0115
0.0304	0.0570	0.0641	0.0005	0.0060	0.0102	0.0108	0.0119
0.0003	0.0006	0.0006	0.0138	0.0046	0.0078	0.0088	0.0083
0.0033	0.0054	0.0057	0.0157	0.0030	0.0044	0.0057	0.0128
0.0030	0.0050	0.0057	0.0076	0.0049	0.0067	0.0067	0.0042
0.0066	0.0096	0.0125	0.0015	0.0036	0.0047	0.0047	0.0027
0.0025	0.0033	0.0033	0.0036	0.0129	0.0175	0.0182	0.0077
0.0090	0.0118	0.0118	0.0095	0.0009	0.0010	0.0009	0.0023
0.0768	0.1082	0.1116	0.0432	0.0032	0.0036	0.0033	0.0047
0.0015	0.0017	0.0016	0.0048	0.0049	0.0057	0.0049	0.0138
0.0015	0.0016	0.0015	0.0049	0.0096	0.0211	0.0650	0.0087
0.0152	0.0173	0.0155	0.0299	0.0094	0.0201	0.0392	0.0116
0.0147	0.0178	0.0148	0.0026	0.0130	0.0342	0.0622	0.0149
0.0106	0.0223	0.0688	0.0083	0.0103	0.0257	0.0514	0.0238
0.0025	0.0048	0.0093	0.0030	0.0185	0.0497	0.0418	0.0109
0.0125	0.0309	0.0562	0.0069	0.0148	0.0387	0.0345	0.0078
0.0292	0.0743	0.1472	0.0113	0.0147	0.0389	0.0336	0.0073
0.0016	0.0040	0.0034	0.0018	0.0094	0.0262	0.0240	0.0066
0.0022	0.0053	0.0048	0.0022	0.0292	0.0751	0.0755	0.0204
0.0067	0.0168	0.0145	0.0038	0.0296	0.0772	0.0800	0.0211
0.0450	0.1342	0.1222	0.1273	0.0295	0.0746	0.0774	0.0219
0.0036	0.0083	0.0084	0.0024	0.0254	0.0716	0.0632	0.0165
0.0136	0.0325	0.0337	0.0065				
0.0070	0.0160	0.0166	0.0037				
0.0462	0.1298	0.1145	0.0161				

